

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM S-1
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware

*(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)*

7819

*(Primary Standard Industrial
Classification Code Number)*

81- 2560811

*(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)*

**132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, CT 06807
(855) 398-0443**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

William J. Rouhana, Jr., Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc.

**132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, CT 06807
(855) 398-0443**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:

**David Alan Miller, Esq.
Brian L. Ross, Esq.
Melissa M. Curvino, Esq.
Graubard Miller
The Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10174
Telephone: (212) 818-8800
Facsimile: (212) 818-8881**

**Brad L. Shiffman, Esq.
Blank Rome LLP
1271 Avenue of the Americas
New York, New York 10020
Telephone: (212) 885-5000
Facsimile: (212) 885-5001**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: **As soon as practicable after the effective date of this registration statement.**

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933 check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each class of securities to be registered (1)	Proposed maximum aggregate offering price (1)(2)	Amount of registration fee
[%] Notes due 2025	\$ 28,750,000	\$ 3,731.75
Total		\$ 3,731.75

- (1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.
- (2) Includes up to \$3,750,000 in aggregate principal amount of additional notes which may be issued upon the exercise of a 30-day option granted to the underwriters to cover overallocments, if any.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities or until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Preliminary Prospectus

Subject to Completion

Dated June 15, 2020



\$25,000,000
[*]% Notes due 2025

We are offering \$25.0 million in aggregate principal amount of [*]% notes due 2025, which we refer to as the “Notes.” The Notes will mature on [*], 2025. We will pay interest on the Notes on March 30, June 30, September 30 and December 30 each year, beginning on September 30, 2020. We may redeem the Notes in whole or in part at any time, or from time to time on or after [*], 2022, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest, as discussed under the caption “*Description of the Notes — Optional Redemption*” in this prospectus. The Notes will be issued in minimum denominations of \$25.00 and integral multiples of \$25.00 in excess thereof.

The Notes will be issued under and subject to the terms of an indenture, a copy of which has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement to which this prospectus is a part. The Notes will be our direct unsecured obligations and rank *pari passu* to all of our currently outstanding unsecured unsubordinated indebtedness. We will have the ability to issue additional debt securities with terms different from the Notes without the consent of the holders of the Notes. If we issue additional debt securities, these additional debt securities could rank higher in priority of payment or have a lien or other security interest greater than that accorded to the holders of the Notes. Because the Notes will not be secured by any of our assets, they will be effectively subordinated to all our existing and future secured indebtedness (including indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant security), to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. The repayment of the Notes will not be guaranteed. In any liquidation, dissolution, bankruptcy or other similar proceeding, the holders of any of our existing or future secured indebtedness may assert rights against the assets pledged to secure that indebtedness in order to receive full payment of their indebtedness before the assets may be used to pay other creditors, including the holders of the Notes.

We intend to list the Notes on the Nasdaq Global Market under the trading symbol “[*]” and we expect trading to commence within 30 days of the original issue date, however we cannot guarantee that the Notes will be approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market or any market. The Notes are expected to trade “flat.” This means that purchasers will not pay, and sellers will not receive, any accrued and unpaid interest on the Notes that is not included in the trading price. Currently, there is no public market for the Notes and there can be no assurance that one will develop.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 and have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements.

Investing in the Notes involves significant risks. Please read “Risk Factors” on page 11 of this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved the Notes or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

You should read this prospectus and any supplements and amendments thereto.

	Per Note	Total ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾
Public offering price	\$ 25.000	\$ 25,000,000
Underwriting discount	\$ 1.250	\$ 1,250,000
Proceeds, before expenses, to us ⁽²⁾	\$ 23.750	\$ 23,750,000

(1) Ladenburg Thalmann, as representative of the underwriters, may exercise an option to purchase up to an additional \$3,750,000 aggregate principal amount of Notes offered hereby, within 30 days of the date of this prospectus. If this option is exercised in full, the total public offering price will be \$28,750,000, the total underwriting discount paid by us will be \$1,437,500, and total proceeds to us, before expenses, will be approximately \$27,312,500.

(2) Total expenses of the offering payable by us, excluding underwriting discounts and commissions, are estimated to be \$350,000.

THE NOTES ARE NOT DEPOSITS OR OTHER OBLIGATIONS OF A BANK AND ARE NOT INSURED BY THE FEDERAL DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION OR ANY OTHER GOVERNMENT AGENCY.

Delivery of the Notes in book-entry form only through The Depository Trust Company will be made on or about [*], 2020.

Lead Bookrunner
Ladenburg Thalmann

Prospectus dated [*], 2020

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<u>PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>SPECIFIC TERMS OF THE NOTES AND THE OFFERING</u>	<u>6</u>
<u>RISK FACTORS</u>	<u>11</u>
<u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u>	<u>25</u>
<u>CAPITALIZATION</u>	<u>26</u>
<u>DESCRIPTION OF THE NOTES</u>	<u>27</u>
<u>CERTAIN U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS</u>	<u>37</u>
<u>UNDERWRITING</u>	<u>40</u>
<u>LEGAL MATTERS</u>	<u>43</u>
<u>EXPERTS</u>	<u>43</u>
<u>WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION; INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE</u>	<u>43</u>

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-1 (the “Registration Statement”) that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”). This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. You should read this prospectus together with the additional information described under the heading “*Where You Can Find More Information; Information Incorporated by Reference*” beginning on page 43 of this prospectus.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different information and, if provided, such information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by us. This prospectus shall not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy offered securities in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such an offering or solicitation. This prospectus does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement. For a more complete understanding of the offering of the securities, you should refer to the registration statement, including its exhibits.

You should not assume that the information appearing in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front cover of this prospectus. You should not assume that the information contained in any documents incorporated by reference herein is accurate as of any date other than the respective dates of those documents. Our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects may have changed since that date.

You should carefully read this entire prospectus, including the information included and referred to under “*Risk Factors*” below, the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and the financial statements and the other information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, before making an investment decision. You should also read and consider the information in the documents to which we have referred you in the section of this prospectus entitled “*Where You Can Find More Information; Incorporation by Reference.*”

This prospectus contains summaries of certain provisions contained in some of the documents described herein, but reference is made to the actual documents for complete information. All of the summaries are qualified in their entirety by the actual documents. Copies of some of the documents referred to herein have been or will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or as exhibits to documents incorporated by reference herein, and you may obtain copies of those documents as described below under the headings “*Where You Can Find More Information; Incorporation by Reference.*” We note that the representations, warranties and covenants made by us in any agreement that is filed as an exhibit to any document that is incorporated by reference herein were made solely for the benefit of the parties to such agreement, including, in some cases, for the purpose of allocating risk among the parties to such agreement, and should not be deemed to be a representation, warranty or covenant to you. Moreover, such representations, warranties or covenants were accurate only as of the date when made. Accordingly, such representations, warranties and covenants should not be relied on as accurately representing the current state of our affairs.

The industry and market data and other statistical information, if any, contained in this prospectus and in the documents we incorporate by reference are based on our own estimates, independent publications, government publications, reports by market research firms or other published independent sources, and, in each case, are believed by us to be reasonable estimates. Although we believe these sources are reliable, we have not independently verified the information.

CERTAIN CORPORATE INFORMATION AND DEFINITIONS

Our company, Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., is referred to in this prospectus as “CSSE,” the “Company,” or “we” or similar pronouns. References to:

- “CSS Productions” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Productions, LLC, our immediate parent;
- “CSS” means Chicken Soup for the Soul, LLC, our intermediate parent company;
- “CSS Holdings” means Chicken Soup for the Soul Holdings, the parent company of CSS and our ultimate parent company;
- “Screen Media” means Screen Media Ventures, LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of CSSE;
- “A Plus” means A Sharp Inc. (d/b/a A Plus), a wholly owned subsidiary of CSSE;
- “Pivotshare” means Pivotshare, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of CSSE.
- “Crackle Plus” means Crackle Plus, LLC, a company formed by CSSE and CPE Holdings, Inc. (an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc.); and
- “Landmark Studio Group” means Landmark Studio Group LLC, a majority owned subsidiary of CSSE.

We and our subsidiaries and affiliates have proprietary rights to the trademarks and trade names used herein, including, among others, Chicken Soup for the Soul®, Crackle®, Popcornflix.com®, Popcornflix Kids®, Truli®, and FrightPix®. Solely as a matter of convenience, trademarks and trade names referred to herein may or may not be accompanied with the marks of “TM” or “®”, however, the absence of such marks is not intended to indicate that the Company or its affiliates or subsidiaries will not assert, to the fullest extent possible under applicable law, their respective rights to such trademarks and trade names.

NOTE ON FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements regarding expectations, hopes, beliefs, intentions or strategies regarding the future. In addition, any statements that refer to projections, forecasts or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking statements. The words “anticipates,” “believes,” “continues,” “could,” “estimates,” “expects,” “intends,” “may,” “might,” “plans,” “possible,” “potential,” “predicts,” “projects,” “should,” “would” and similar expressions may identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. Forward-looking statements in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus may include, for example, statements about:

- our limited operating history;
- our financial performance, including our ability to generate revenue;
- the outbreak of the novel coronavirus (“COVID-19”), including the measures to reduce its spread, and the impact on the economy and demand for our services, which may precipitate or exacerbate other risks and uncertainties our financial performance, including our ability to generate revenue;
- potential effects of a challenging economy, for example, on the demand for our advertising and marketing services, on our clients’ financial condition and on our business or financial condition;
- the ability of our content offerings to achieve market acceptance;
- the impact of increased competition;
- our success in retaining or recruiting, or changes required in, our officers, key employees or directors;
- our potential ability to obtain additional financing when and if needed;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property;
- our ability to complete strategic acquisitions, including joint ventures and co-production arrangements;
- our ability to manage growth and integrate acquired operations;
- uninterrupted service by the third-party service providers we rely on for the distribution of our content and delivery of ad impressions;
- the potential liquidity and trading of our securities;
- downward revisions to, or withdrawals of, our credit ratings by third-party rating agencies;
- regulatory or operational risks;
- our estimates regarding expenses, future revenue, capital requirements and needs for additional financing; and
- the time during which we will be an Emerging Growth Company (“EGC”) under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or JOBS Act.

The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus are based on current expectations and beliefs concerning future developments and their potential effects on us. There can be no assurance that future developments will be those that have been anticipated. These forward-looking statements involve a number of risks, uncertainties (some of which are beyond our control) or other assumptions that may cause actual results or performance to be materially different from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. These risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to, those risk factors incorporated by reference or described in the section titled “*Risk Factors*.” Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or should any of our assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary in material respects from those projected in these forward-looking statements. We do not undertake any obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

The information below is only a summary of more detailed information included elsewhere or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. This summary may not contain all the information that is important to you or that you should consider before making a decision to invest in the Notes. Please read this entire prospectus, including the risk factors, as well as the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, carefully.

Overview

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc. operates streaming video-on-demand networks (“VOD”). The Company owns a majority stake in Crackle Plus, a company formed with an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc., which owns and operates a variety of ad-supported and subscription-based VOD networks including Crackle®, Popcornflix, Popcornflix Kids®, Truli®, Pivotshare, Españolflix and FrightPix®. The Company also acquires and distributes video content through Screen Media and produces long and short-form original content through subsidiaries and outside partnerships. The content acquired or produced by the Company is sometimes used exclusively on our networks and is generally also sold to others with the goal of providing our networks access to original and exclusive advertising-supported online video-on-demand (“AVOD”) content at a lower cost and to generate additional revenue and operating cash flow for the Company.

Our majority-owned Crackle Plus subsidiary was formed in partnership with Sony Pictures Television Inc. in May 2019. Crackle Plus is one of the largest, independent AVOD network groups in the United States, with viewers streaming an average of approximately 30 million programs per month. The popular network, Crackle®, is the largest Crackle Plus network and a top performer on the industry-leading Roku platform. Our VOD networks deliver popular and original new content covering a wide range of themes, including family, children and faith, as well as proven genres, such as horror and comedy. We are differentiated among other VOD network operators by our ability to generate original content cost-effectively and by our access to more than 78,000 hours of programming. Our Screen Media subsidiary has one of the largest independently owned television and film libraries in the industry and provides content to the Crackle Plus networks and third-party networks. Our VOD networks also feature original content produced through our subsidiaries, Landmark Studio Group and A Plus. Our exclusive, perpetual, sublicensable and worldwide license, to create and distribute video content under the Chicken Soup for the Soul® brand (the “Brand”) also allows us to create new Brand-focused AVOD channels, which we expect to do in the future.

We believe CSSE is the only independent AVOD network operator with the proven capability to create and distribute original programming and access to an extensive amount of valuable company-owned and third-party library content. We believe this differentiation is important at a time of a major shift in consumer viewing habits, as the growth in both availability and quality of high-speed broadband enables consumers to consume video content at any time on any device.

According to industry projections, the global market for AVOD network revenue is expected to increase at a compound annual growth rate of 21% between 2018 and 2024, reaching \$56 billion by the end of the period. At the same time, advertising spending on linear television networks is expected to decline as more viewers transition from pay television subscriptions to online video viewing. We believe AVOD networks will grow rapidly as consumers seek affordable programming alternatives to multiple subscription video-on-demand (“SVOD”) offerings.

In this environment, our strategy is to build a leading VOD network featuring a range of mass-appeal and thematic programming options. We are executing on this strategy in three ways:

- **Increasing content.** Our “originals and exclusives” focus, supported by our distribution and production business, is designed to distinguish our network brands among viewers. We are able to add to our existing broad base of content without the significant capital outlay of a traditional television or film studio by producing new originals at low cost through creative partnerships, such as our award-winning 2019 series *Going from Broke*. Through Screen Media, we are also acquiring the rights to additional exclusive content. Finally, we are expanding our production capacity through partnerships, the formation of our majority owned subsidiary Landmark Studio Group and acquiring additional content libraries, such as our recent acquisition of the Foresight Unlimited film library.
- **Growing and retaining audience while adding new networks.** Our goal is to utilize our increasing, exclusive access to quality programming to grow and retain viewers on our existing networks. As we grow our content libraries, we are also continuously evaluating opportunities to create new thematic networks that feature certain genres and other types of programming that can deliver more targeted advertising opportunities to marketers such as a Chicken Soup for the Soul network for families. Finally, we are also actively evaluating opportunities to acquire additional AVOD networks that can accelerate our path to scale.
- **Building our advertising sales capability.** As we grow our stable of networks, we are investing in integration of advertising platform technology stacks and the growth of our sales force. As our advertising sales capability matures, we believe we will be positioned to increase both overall advertising sales and ad insertion rates.

Business Strategy

We are a media company operating Crackle Plus, our AVOD and SVOD network groups, supported by our distribution and production capabilities. Our goal is to grow our network platform organically and through consolidation to establish a leading AVOD business positioned to capture ad revenue as that revenue increasingly moves from linear TV to online video.

Our two main areas of operation are:

Online Networks. We distribute and exhibit VOD content directly to consumers across all digital platforms, such as connected TVs, smartphones, tablets, gaming consoles and the web through our owned and operated AVOD Crackle Plus networks. We also distribute our own and third-party owned content to consumers across various digital platforms through our SVOD network, Pivotshare. We generate advertising revenues primarily by serving video advertisements to our streaming viewers on our AVOD networks and subscription revenues from customers on our SVOD network.

Our acquisition of Screen Media in 2017 marked our entry into the direct-to-consumer online VOD market through Popcornflix, which has an extensive footprint with apps that have been downloaded more than 27 million times.

Popcornflix is one of the largest AVOD services. Under the Popcornflix brand, we operate a series of direct-to consumer advertising supported channels. As a “free-to-consumer” digital streaming channel, Popcornflix is an extremely popular online video platform that can be found on the web, iPhones and iPads, Android products, Roku, Xbox, Amazon Fire, Apple TV, Chromecast and Samsung and Panasonic internet connected televisions, among others. Popcornflix is currently available in 61 countries, including the United States, United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, Germany, France, and Singapore, with additional territories to be added.

In October 2018, we completed the acquisition of the assets of Truli Media Corp., which operates a nascent global family-friendly and faith-based online video channel (“Truli”). Truli’s content fits strategically in our thematic network plans and includes film, television, music videos, sports, comedy, and educational material.

In May 2019, we launched a new streaming video subsidiary known as Crackle Plus, through which we operate VOD networks including, Crackle and Popcornflix. Viewers are able to watch premium video content, such as films and TV shows on our networks. The networks are accessible through various internet connected digital devices such as mobile, tablet, smart TV and console. The networks primarily earn revenue from advertisements placed on the platform through direct and reseller channels. Our entry into subscription-based VOD was initiated by our acquisition of the Pivotshare VOD platform in August 2018. All of our VOD operations are currently in our Crackle Plus subsidiary. As a result, Crackle Plus, is one of the largest AVOD companies in the United States as well as a targeted SVOD network provider. Within Crackle Plus we have been primarily focused on growing our AVOD networks and may turn more attention to our SVOD opportunities in the future.

Television and Film Distribution and Production. We distribute movies and television series worldwide, through Screen Media, to consumers through license agreements across all media, including theatrical, home video, pay-per-view, free, cable, pay television, VOD, mobile and new digital media platforms worldwide. We own the copyright or long-term distribution rights to over 1,000 television series and feature films, representing one of the largest independently owned libraries of filmed entertainment in the world.

We have distribution licensing agreements with numerous VOD services across all major platforms, such as cable and satellite VOD and Internet VOD, which includes TVOD for rentals or purchases of films, AVOD for free-to-viewer streaming of films supported by advertisements and SVOD for unlimited access to films for a monthly fee.

Our cable and satellite VOD distribution agreements include those with DirecTV, Cablevision (Altice USA), Verizon and In Demand (owned by Comcast, Charter and Time Warner Cable-Spectrum). Our Internet VOD distribution agreements include agreements with Amazon, iTunes, Samsung, YouTube, Hulu, Xbox, Netflix, Sony, and Vudu, among others.

We have expanded our international distribution capabilities in connection with the acquisition of the Foresight library.

Screen Media's distribution capabilities across all media give us the ability to monetize various rights to our produced and co-produced television series and films directly, including our content that will be produced through Landmark Studio Group. The cost savings from Screen Media's distribution capabilities enhance our revenue and profits from our produced or co-produced content. Furthermore, Screen Media supports the programming and content needs of our AVOD networks. The ability to monetize film and TV rights through Screen Media gives us the ability to retain exclusive AVOD rights for some of our acquired or produced films or television series on a cost advantaged basis.

Historically, we have produced content in two main ways. We work with sponsors and use highly regarded independent producers to develop and produce our television and short-form video content, including Brand-related content. We also derive revenue from our subsidiary, A Plus, which develops and distributes high-quality, empathetic short-form videos to millions of people worldwide. A Plus enhances our ability to distribute short form versions of our video productions thereby meeting commitments to sponsors and providing us with content developed and distributed by A Plus that is complementary to the Brand.

As a result of launching Crackle Plus we decided to change our approach to content production, focusing primarily on co-production partnerships in order to build our AVOD networks, through Crackle Plus, and our worldwide distribution capabilities through Screen Media. By focusing this way, we believe that we will be able to grow our business more rapidly by entering into production agreements with a variety of production partners. In October 2019, we launched Landmark Studio Group, our first production co-venture subsidiary. Landmark Studio Group is a fully integrated entertainment company focused on ownership, development, and production of quality entertainment franchises.

Landmark Studio Group develops, produces, distributes and owns all the intellectual property (IP) it creates, building a valuable library. The studio is independent, with the ability to sell its content to any network or platform, while also developing and producing original content for Crackle Plus. Landmark Studio Group controls all worldwide rights and distributes those rights exclusively through Screen Media.

We plan to enter into other similar co-production arrangements going forward. We will only occasionally produce programming internally.

Competition

We are in a highly competitive business. The market for streaming entertainment is rapidly changing. We face competition from companies within the entertainment business and from alternative forms of leisure entertainment, such as travel, sporting events, outdoor recreation, video games, the internet and other cultural and computer-related activities. We compete for viewers and programming with much larger companies which have significant resources and brand recognition, including dominant video on demand providers such as Netflix, HBO Max (including HBO Go), Hulu, Amazon Prime Video, Disney Plus, Apple TV, Fubo TV, Sling TV, and major film and television studios. We also compete with numerous independent motion picture and television distribution and production companies, television networks, pay television systems and online media platforms for viewers, subscribers, and the services of performing artists, producers and other creative and technical personnel and production financing, all of which are essential to the success of our businesses.

In addition, our video content competes for media outlet and audience acceptance with video content produced and distributed by other companies. As a result, the success of any of our video content is dependent not only on the quality and acceptance of a particular production, but also on the quality and acceptance of other competing video content available in the marketplace at or near the same time.

Given such competition, and our stage of development, we emphasize a lower cost structure, risk mitigation, reliance on financial partnerships and innovative financial strategies. We rely on our flexibility and agility as well as the entrepreneurial spirit of our employees, partners and affiliates, in order to provide creative, desirable video content.

Intellectual Property

We are party to a License Agreement with CSS ("CSS License Agreement") through which we have been granted the perpetual, exclusive, worldwide license by CSS to produce and distribute video content using the Brand and related content, such as stories published in the Chicken Soup for the Soul books. Chicken Soup for the Soul and related names are trademarks owned by CSS. We have the proprietary rights (including copyrights) in all Company-produced content. As a result of the acquisitions of Screen Media, Pivotshare, Crackle, and other smaller libraries and companies, we now own copyrights or global long-term distribution rights to approximately 78,000 hours of content.

We rely on a combination of copyright, trademark, trade secret laws, confidentiality procedures, contractual provisions and other similar measures to protect our proprietary information and intellectual property rights. Our ability to protect and enforce our intellectual property rights is subject to certain risks and from time to time we encounter disputes over rights and obligations concerning intellectual property, which are described more fully in the section titled “*Risk Factors*.”

Employees

As of June 15, 2020, we had 98 direct employees. The services of certain personnel, including our chairman and chief executive officer, vice chairman and chief strategy officer, our senior brand advisor and director, and chief financial officer, among others, are provided to us under a management services agreement between the Company and CSS. We also utilize many consultants in the ordinary course of our business and hire additional personnel on a project-by-project basis. We believe that our employee and labor relations are good, and we are committed to inclusion and strict policies and procedures to maintain a safe work environment.

Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”). As long as we are an emerging growth company, we are eligible to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies. These include, but are not limited to:

- Not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting;
- Not being required to comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditors’ report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements;
- Reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation; and
- Exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

We may remain an “emerging growth company” until as late as December 31, 2022, the fiscal year-end following the fifth anniversary of the completion of our initial public offering, though we may cease to be an emerging growth company earlier under certain circumstances, including if (a) we have more than \$1.07 billion in annual gross revenue in any fiscal year, (b) the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our most recently completed second fiscal quarter, or (c) we issue more than \$1 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period.

Summary Risk Factors

An investment in our securities involves various risks that you should consider carefully before investing in us. Many of these risks are discussed in this prospectus under the heading “*Risk Factors*” beginning on page 11. If any of these risks occur, our business, financial condition, liquidity, results of operations, prospects and ability to make interest payments to our noteholders and distributions to our shareholders could be materially and adversely affected. In that case, the trading price of our securities could decline, and you may lose a portion or your entire investment. These risks include:

- The Notes will be unsecured and therefore are effectively subordinated to any secured indebtedness we have incurred or may incur in the future.
- The Notes will be structurally subordinated to the indebtedness and other liabilities of our subsidiaries.
- The indenture under which the Notes are issued contains limited protection for holders of the Notes.
- An increase in market interest rates could result in a decrease in the value of the Notes.

- There is no existing trading market for the Notes, and, even if Nasdaq approves the listing of the Notes, an active trading market for the Notes may not develop, which could limit your ability to sell the Notes and/or the market price of the Notes.
- We may choose to redeem the Notes when prevailing interest rates are relatively low.
- If we default on our obligations to pay our other indebtedness, we may not be able to make payments on the Notes.
- We will use a substantial portion of the proceeds of this offering to repay our existing indebtedness under our credit facility with Patriot Bank, N.A., may use a portion to pay certain obligations to redeem equity owned by CPE Holdings, Inc. (an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc.) in Crackle Plus, and will have broad discretion with respect to the use of the remaining proceeds of this offering.
- We are not obligated to contribute to a sinking fund to retire the Notes and the Notes are not guaranteed by a third-party.
- We have and may continue to incur losses in the operation of our business.
- Difficult conditions in the economy generally and our industry specifically resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic may cause interruptions in our operations, a slow-down in the production or acquisition of new content, and changes in demand for our products and services.
- Competition could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.
- Interruptions in our ability to provide our video on demand products and our service to our customers could damage our reputation, which could have a material adverse effect on us.
- The occurrence of cyber-incidents, or a deficiency in our cybersecurity or in those of any of our third party service providers, could negatively impact our business by causing a disruption to our operations, a compromise or corruption of our confidential information or damage to our business relationships or reputation, all of which could negatively impact our business and results of operations.
- The loss of key personnel, including our executive officers, could have a material adverse effect on us.
- Our inability to recruit or retain qualified personnel, or maintain access to key third-party service providers and software developers, could have a material adverse effect on us.
- The market price and trading volume of our securities may be volatile.

Corporate Information

We are a Delaware corporation formed on May 4, 2016. CSS Productions, our predecessor and immediate parent company, was formed in December 2014 by CSS, and initiated operations in January 2015. We were formed to create a discrete entity focused on video content opportunities using the Brand. In May 2016, pursuant to the terms of the contribution agreement among CSS, CSS Productions and the Company, all video content assets owned by CSS, CSS Productions and their CSS subsidiaries were transferred to the Company in consideration for its issuance to CSS Productions of 8,600,568 shares of the Company's Class B Common Stock (the "Class B Common Stock"). Thereafter, CSS Productions' operating activities ceased, and the Company continued the business operations of producing and distributing the video content.

Our address is 132 East Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W, Cos Cob, CT 06807. Our telephone number is (855) 398-0443, and our website address is <https://www.cssentertainment.com>. The information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of this prospectus.

SPECIFIC TERMS OF THE NOTES AND THE OFFERING

Issuer	Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.
Title of the Securities	[*]% Notes due 2025
Initial Aggregate Principal Amount Being Offered	\$25.0 million
Option to Purchase Additional Notes	The underwriters may also purchase from us up to an additional \$3.75 million aggregate principal amount of Notes within 30 days of the date of this prospectus (the “Option Notes”).
Public Offering Price	100% of the aggregate principal amount of the Notes.
Principal Payable at Maturity	The principal amount of each Note will be payable on its stated maturity date at the corporate trust office of the Trustee, Paying Agent, Registrar and Transfer Agent for the Notes or at such other office in New York, New York as we may designate.
Type of Note	Fixed rate note.
Listing	There is no public market for the Notes. We intend to list the Notes on the Nasdaq Global Market under the trading symbol “[*]” and expect trading to commence within 30 days of the Original Issue Date. We cannot assure you, however, that the Notes will be approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market or any market.
Rating of the Notes	BBB from Egan-Jones Ratings Company. An explanation of the significance of ratings may be obtained from the rating agency. Generally, rating agencies base their ratings on such material and information, and such of their own investigations, studies and assumptions, as they deem appropriate. The rating of the Notes should be evaluated independently from similar ratings of other securities. A credit rating of a security is paid for by the issuer and is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be subject to review, revision, suspension, reduction or withdrawal at any time by the assigning rating agency. See “ <i>Risk Factors — A downgrade, suspension or withdrawal of the credit rating assigned by a rating agency to us or the Notes, if any, could cause the liquidity or market value of the Notes to decline significantly.</i> ”
Interest Rate	[*]% per year
Day Count Basis	360-day year of twelve 30-day months
Original Issue Date	[*], 2020 (except in the case of the Option Notes, in which case the Original Issue Date will be the date the Option Notes are actually issued).
Stated Maturity Date	[*], 2025
Date Interest Starts to Accrue	Original Issue Date
Interest Payment Dates	Every March 30, June 30, September 30, and December 30, beginning September 30, 2020. If an interest payment date falls on a non-business day, the applicable interest payment will be made on the next business day and no additional interest will accrue as a result of such delayed payment.
Interest Periods	The initial interest period will be the period from and including the Original Issue Date to, but excluding, the initial interest payment date, and the subsequent interest periods will be the periods from and including an interest payment date to, but excluding, the next interest payment date or the stated maturity date, as the case may be.

Regular Record Dates for Interest

March 15, June 15, September 15, and December 15, beginning September 15, 2020.

Specified Currency

U.S. Dollars

Place of Payment

New York City

Ranking of Notes

The Notes will be our direct unsecured obligations and will rank:

- Pari passu with, which means equal to, all of our currently outstanding unsecured unsubordinated indebtedness issued by us. The Notes will also rank pari passu with our general liabilities, which consist of trade and other payables, including any outstanding dividends payable on our 9.75% Series A Cumulative Redeemable Perpetual Preferred Stock (“Series A Preferred Stock”), interest and debt fees payable, vendor payables, film acquisition and programming obligations, and accrued participation costs and other expenses such as auditor fees, legal fees, director fees, etc. In total, these general liabilities were approximately \$59.2 million as of March 31, 2020. We will have the ability to issue from time to time other debt securities with terms different from the Notes, including terms providing for seniority of such new debt securities, without the consent of the holders of the Notes, as further described below under “—*Further Issuances.*”
- Senior to any of our future indebtedness that expressly provides it is subordinated to the Notes. We currently do not have outstanding debt that is subordinated to the Notes and do not currently intend to issue indebtedness that expressly provides that it is subordinated to the Notes. Therefore, the Notes, as currently contemplated, will not be senior to any indebtedness or obligations.
- Effectively subordinated to all of our existing and future secured indebtedness (including indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant a security interest), to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness, as well as any secured indebtedness that we may incur in the future, such as a new loan facility, or any new indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant a security interest, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. In any liquidation, dissolution, bankruptcy or other similar proceeding, the holders of any of our existing or future secured indebtedness may assert rights against the assets pledged to secure that indebtedness in order to receive full payment of their indebtedness before the assets may be used to pay other creditors, including the holders of the Notes, and any assets of our subsidiaries will not be directly available to satisfy the claims of our creditors, including holders of the Notes.
- Structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other obligations of any of our subsidiaries and financing vehicles, including the unsecured \$5,000,000 revolving credit facility between Landmark Studio Group, as borrower, and Cole Investments VII LLC, as lender, since the Notes are obligations exclusively of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., and not of any of our subsidiaries. Structural subordination means that creditors of a parent entity are subordinate to creditors of a subsidiary entity with respect to the subsidiary’s assets.

Except as described under the captions “*Description of the Notes — Events of Default*” and “—*Merger or Consolidation*” in this prospectus, the indenture does not contain any provisions that give you protection in the event we issue a large amount of debt or we are acquired by another entity.

Denominations	We will issue the Notes in denominations of \$25.00 and integral multiples of \$25.00 in excess thereof.
Business Day	Each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday that is not a day on which banking institutions in New York City are authorized or required by law or executive order to close.
Optional Redemptions	<p>The Notes may be redeemed in whole or in part at any time or from time to time at our option on or after [*], 2022 upon not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days written notice by mail prior to the date fixed for redemption thereof. The redemption price shall include (i) 100% of the outstanding principal amount of the Notes called for redemption on the date fixed for redemption plus (ii) all accrued and unpaid interest payments otherwise payable thereon through the date fixed for redemption. In addition, in the event of a merger or sale of the Company or substantially all of its assets or a majority of the Company's equity (on an after issued basis) in one or a series of related transactions, we will have the right to redeem the Notes prior to [*], 2022 in connection with the consummation of such transactions on the foregoing terms.</p> <p>You may be prevented from exchanging or transferring the Notes when they are subject to redemption. In case any Notes are to be redeemed in part only, the redemption notice will provide that, upon surrender of such Note, you will receive, without charge, a new Note or Notes of authorized denominations representing the principal amount of your remaining unredeemed Notes.</p> <p>If we redeem only some of the Notes, the Trustee will determine the method for selection of the particular Notes to be redeemed, in accordance with the indenture, and in accordance with the rules of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which the Notes are listed. Unless we default in payment of the redemption price, on and after the date of redemption, interest will cease to accrue on the Notes called for redemption.</p>

Sinking Fund	The Notes will not be subject to any sinking fund (<i>i.e.</i> , no amounts will be set aside by us to ensure repayment of the Notes at maturity). As a result, our ability to repay the Notes at maturity will depend on our financial condition on the date that we are required to repay the Notes.
No Repayment at Option of Holders	Holder will not have the option to have the Notes repaid prior to the stated maturity date.
Defeasance	The Notes are subject to defeasance by us. “Defeasance” means that, by depositing with a trustee an amount of cash and/or government securities sufficient to pay all principal and interest, if any, on the Notes when due and satisfying any additional conditions required under the indenture relating to the Notes, we will be deemed to have been discharged from our obligations under the Notes.
Covenant Defeasance	The Notes are subject to covenant defeasance by us. In the event of a “covenant defeasance,” upon depositing such funds and satisfying similar conditions discussed below we would be released from the restrictive covenants under the indenture relating to the Notes. The consequences to the holders of the Notes is that, while they no longer benefit from the restrictive covenants under the indenture, and while the Notes may not be accelerated for any reason, the holders of Notes nonetheless could look to us for repayment of the Notes if there were a shortfall in the funds deposited with the trustee or the trustee is prevented from making the payment.
Form of Notes	The Notes will be represented by global securities that will be deposited and registered in the name of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) or its nominee. This means that, except in limited circumstances, you will not receive certificates for the Notes. Beneficial interests in the Notes will be represented through book-entry accounts of financial institutions acting on behalf of beneficial owners as direct and indirect participants in DTC. Investors may elect to hold interests in the Notes through either DTC, if they are a participant, or indirectly through organizations that are participants in DTC.
Trustee, Paying Agent, Registrar, and Transfer Agent	U.S. Bank National Association
Limitation on Restricted Payments	<p>Upon (i) the failure to pay interest on any Note when such interest is due and payable or (ii) the occurrence of an Event of Default and while any such interest payment remains unpaid or such Event of Default is ongoing, the indenture prohibits us from taking the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Declaring or paying any dividend, making any distribution on or in respect of our capital stock or making any similar payment to the direct or indirect holders of our capital stock in their capacity as such; · Purchasing, repurchasing, redeeming, retiring or otherwise acquiring for value any of our capital stock held by any person (other than by us or a subsidiary of ours) or any capital stock of a subsidiary held by any of our affiliates; · Purchasing for value, prior to scheduled maturity, any scheduled repayment of any subordinated obligations; or · Making any investment in any person.

Events of Default

You will have rights if an Event of Default occurs with respect to the Notes.

The term “Event of Default” in respect of the Notes means any of the following:

- We do not pay the principal (or premium, if any) of any Note when due.
- We do not pay interest on any Note when due, and such default is not cured within 30 days.
- We remain in breach of any other covenant with respect to the Notes for 60 days after we receive a written notice of default stating we are in breach. The notice must be sent by either the Trustee or holders of at least 25.0% of the principal amount of the Notes.
- We file for bankruptcy or certain other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur and in the case of certain orders or decrees entered against us under any bankruptcy law, such order or decree remains undischarged or unstayed for a period of 60 days.

Further Issuances

We have the ability to issue from time to time other debt securities with terms different from the Notes and, without consent of the holders thereof, as well as the ability to reopen the Notes and issue additional Notes. If we issue additional debt securities, these additional debt securities could rank higher in priority of payment or have a lien or other security interest greater than that accorded to the holders of the Notes.

Global Clearance and Settlement Procedures

Interests in the Notes will trade in DTC’s Same Day Funds Settlement System, and any permitted secondary market trading activity in such Notes will, therefore, be required by DTC to be settled in immediately available funds. None of the Trustee, the Paying Agent or us will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC or its participants or indirect participants of their respective obligations under the rules and procedures governing their operations.

Risk Factors

Investing in the Notes involves risks. You should carefully consider the risks described under “*Risk Factors*” in this prospectus, our Annual Report on Form 10-K and our subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q as well as the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus before deciding to invest in the Notes.

Use of Proceeds

We intend to use a substantial portion of the net proceeds from the sale of the Notes offered under this prospectus to repay the approximately \$13.9 million of outstanding principal and interest owed by us under our commercial loan facility with Patriot Bank, N.A. and will have broad discretion with respect to the use of the remaining proceeds of this offering, which may include using of some or all of such remaining proceeds to pay certain obligations to Sony Pictures Television Inc. or its affiliates that may otherwise be payable in shares of our Series A Preferred Stock.

RISK FACTORS

Any investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Potential investors are urged to read and consider the risks and uncertainties relating to an investment in the Company as set forth in this prospectus and in the documents we incorporate by reference herein. Potential investors also should read and consider the risks and uncertainties discussed under the item “Risk Factors” in our [Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019](#), our [Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2020](#), and our subsequent quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and annual reports on Form 10-K, all of which are incorporated herein by reference, and may be amended, supplemented, or superseded from time to time by other reports we file with the SEC in the future. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also affect our business and results of operations. If any of these risks actually occur, our business, financial condition, or results of operations could be seriously harmed. In that event, the market price for our securities could decline and you may lose all or part of your investment.

Risks Relating to COVID-19

Our business, results of operations, and financial condition has been and may continue to be impacted by the recent coronavirus (COVID-19) outbreak.

The global spread of the coronavirus (COVID-19) and the various attempts to contain it have created significant volatility, uncertainty and economic disruption. In response to government mandates, health care advisories and otherwise responding to employee and vendor concerns, we have altered certain aspects of our operations. Our workforce has had to spend a significant amount of time working from home, which impacts productivity and our ability to exercise proper internal controls over our operations. All of our productions are paused, as are productions of third-parties who supply us with content. Other operating partners have similarly had their operations altered or temporarily suspended, including those partners that we use for our Crackle Plus operations as well as development, production and post-production of content. To the extent the resulting economic disruption continues for an extended period or worsens, we could see some vendors go out of business, resulting in supply constraints and increased costs or delays to our operations. Such pauses may cause us temporarily to have less new content available on our services in subsequent quarters, which could negatively impact consumer demand for and user retention to our service. Temporary operation pauses or permanent shutdowns in production could result in content asset impairments or other charges and will change the timing and amount of cash outflows associated with operating activity.

The full extent to which the COVID-19 pandemic and the various responses to it continue to impact our business, operations and financial results will depend on numerous evolving factors that we may not be able to accurately predict, including: the duration and scope of the pandemic; governmental, business and individuals’ actions that have been and continue to be taken in response to the pandemic; the availability and cost to access the capital markets; the effect on our customers and customer demand for our services; disruptions or restrictions on our employees’ ability to work and travel; interruptions or restrictions related to the provision of streaming services over the internet, including impacts on content delivery networks and streaming quality; and any stoppages, disruptions or increased costs associated with our development, production, post-production, marketing and distribution of original programming. Furthermore, given increased government expenditures associated with their COVID-19 response, we could see increased government obligations which could negatively impact our results of operations. If we need to further access the capital markets, there can be no assurance that financing may be available on attractive terms, if at all. We will continue to actively monitor the issues raised by the COVID-19 pandemic and may take further actions that alter our business operations, including content production, as may be required by federal, state, local or foreign authorities, or that we determine are in the best interests of our employees, customers, partners and stockholders. It is not clear what the potential effects any such alterations or modifications may have on our business, including the effects on our customers, suppliers or vendors, or on our financial results.

The COVID-19 pandemic has also led to an increase in our Crackle Plus users relative to our quarterly forecast and historic trends. These results, as well as those of other metrics such as revenues, operating margins, net income and other financial and operating data, may not be indicative of results for future periods. Our increase in user additions may reflect the acceleration of growth that we would have seen in subsequent periods, and user growth may slow or reverse, due to slower acquisition and/or higher cancellations, as government and other restrictions are relaxed. In addition to the potential direct impacts to our business, the global economy is likely to be significantly weakened as a result of the actions taken in response to COVID-19. To the extent that such a weakened global economy impacts advertisers’ ability or willingness to pay for advertisements on our service or vendors’ ability to provide services to us, we could see our business and results of operations negatively impacted. In addition, a weakened global economy could impact our ability to collect our outstanding accounts receivable which would have a negative impact on our results of operations.

Risks Related to Our Operations

We have incurred operating losses in the past, may incur operating losses in the future and may never achieve or maintain profitability.

As of December 31, 2019 and March 31, 2020, we had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$32.7 million and \$44.1 million, respectively, and for the year ended December 31, 2019 and the three months ended March 31, 2019 and 2020, we had a net loss of approximately \$3.4 million and \$11.4 million, respectively. We expect our operating expenses to increase in the future as we continue to expand our operations. If our revenue and gross profit do not grow at a greater rate than our operating expenses, we will not be able to achieve and maintain profitability. Our indebtedness could limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in the market in which we compete. Although we believe we have adequate sources of liquidity to meet our anticipated requirements for working capital, debt service, capital expenditures and cash dividend payments on our Series A Preferred Stock, there can be no assurance that our cash flow from operations will be sufficient to service our debt, which may require us to borrow additional funds for that purpose, restructure or otherwise refinance our debt. Additionally, we may encounter unforeseen operating or legal expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other factors that may result in losses in future periods. If our expenses exceed our revenue, we may never achieve or maintain profitability and some or all aspects of our business operations may need to be modified or curtailed.

We may not be able to generate sufficient cash to service our debt and other obligations.

Our ability to make payments on our debt, including our Notes, and our other obligations will depend on our financial and operating performance, which is subject to prevailing economic and competitive conditions and to certain financial, business and other factors beyond our control. We may be unable to attain a level of cash flows from operating activities sufficient to permit us to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest on our debt, including the Notes, and other obligations, including the cash dividend payments on our Series A Preferred Stock.

If we are unable to service our debt and other obligations from cash flows, we may need to refinance or restructure all or a portion of such obligations prior to maturity. Our ability to refinance or restructure our debt and other obligations will depend upon the condition of the capital markets and our financial condition at such time. Any refinancing or restructuring could be at higher interest rates and may require us to comply with more onerous covenants, which could further restrict our business operations. If our cash flows are insufficient to service our debt and other obligations, we may not be able to refinance or restructure any of these obligations on commercially reasonable terms or at all and any refinancing or restructuring could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, or financial condition.

If our cash flows are insufficient to fund our debt and other obligations and we are unable to refinance or restructure these obligations, we may be forced to reduce or delay investments or to sell material assets or operations to meet our debt and other obligations. We cannot assure you that we would be able to implement any of these alternative measures on satisfactory terms or at all or that the proceeds from such alternatives would be adequate to meet any debt or other obligations then due. If it becomes necessary to implement any of these alternative measures, our business, results of operations, or financial condition could be materially and adversely affected.

We do not have a long operating history on which to evaluate our company.

Our predecessor, CSS Productions, was formed in December 2014 and we were formed in May 2016 to acquire CSS Productions' assets in order to create a discrete, focused entity to pursue video content opportunities using the Chicken Soup for the Soul brand. We focused our company in the area of video on demand in 2017 and have a limited history in operating commercial video on demand offerings. A significant portion of our video on demand operations assets was acquired by us from CPE Holdings, Inc in May 2019, and we have only a limited history in controlling and operating such assets. We face all the risks faced by newer companies in the media industry, including significant competition from existing and emerging media producers and distributors, many of which are significantly more established, larger and better financed than our Company.

We may not realize the advantages we expect from Crackle Plus

In May 2019, we consummated a contribution agreement with CPE Holdings, Inc. (“CPEH”), an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc., pursuant to which we and CPEH contributed certain assets relating to our respective VOD businesses to our newly formed majority owned subsidiary, Crackle Plus.

Our quarterly and annual operating results may fluctuate due to the costs and expenses of acquiring and managing the Crackle Plus business. We may require additional debt or equity financing for the Crackle Plus business, resulting in additional leverage or dilution of ownership therein.

Additionally, CPEH has certain protective voting rights in Crackle Plus. Certain actions require supermajority approval of the board of managers of Crackle Plus, including the managers appointed by CPEH. As a result, our investment in Crackle Plus involves risks that are different from the risks involved in our independent operations. These risks include the possibility that CPEH has economic or business interests or goals that are or become inconsistent with our overall economic or business interests or goals.

The operating agreement between us and CPEH provides CPEH the right to either convert its membership interests in Crackle Plus into common units of Crackle Plus or put its membership interests in Crackle Plus to us at certain times and on the terms specified in the operating agreement. If CPEH elects to convert its membership interest in Crackle Plus into common units of Crackle Plus, our ownership interest will be reduced to a 51% interest. If CPEH exercises its put right, we may pay the purchase price for CPEH’s membership interests in cash or in shares of our Series A Preferred Stock, at our option. Subject to certain limitations, if CPEH has not exercised its put or conversion right by the end of the exercise period, CPEH will be deemed to have automatically exercised the put right on the last day of the exercise period. If we are required to purchase CPEH’s membership interests, we may use a portion of the proceeds of this offering to pay for such membership interests in cash, rather than issuing a significant number of shares of our Series A Preferred Stock to CPEH.

All of our tangible and intangible property is pledged to secure existing indebtedness.

All of our tangible and intangible property, including accounts receivable and intellectual property, is pledged under a first priority security interest to secure our repayment obligations under indebtedness owed to Patriot Bank, N.A. under our Commercial Loan, as described under “*Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Operating and Financial Condition – Liquidity and Capital Resources - “Commercial Loan”*” in our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the three months ended March 31, 2020. We intend to repay all obligations under this commercial loan facility using proceed from this offering.

If our efforts to attract and retain VOD viewers are not successful, our business may be adversely affected.

Our success depends in part on attracting viewers, retaining them on our VOD service and ultimately monetizing our VOD services and content offerings. As such, we are seeking to expand our viewer base and increase the number of hours that are streamed across our platforms to create additional revenue opportunities. To attract and retain viewers, we need to be able to respond efficiently to changes in consumer tastes and preferences and to offer our viewers access to the content they enjoy on terms that they accept. Effective monetization may require us to continue to update the features and functionality of our VOD offerings for viewers and advertisers.

Our ability to attract viewers will depend in part on our ability to effectively market our services, as well as provide a quality experience for selecting and viewing TV series and movies. Furthermore, the relative service levels, content offerings, pricing and related features of competitors as compared to our service will determine our ability to attract and retain viewers. Competitors include other streaming entertainment providers, including those that provide AVOD and SVOD offerings, and other direct-to-consumer video distributors and more broadly other sources of entertainment that our viewers could choose in their moments of free time. If consumers do not perceive our service offerings to be of value, including if we introduce new or adjust existing features or service offerings, or change the mix of content in a manner that is not favorably received by them, we may not be able to attract and retain consumers. In addition, many of our consumers originate from word-of-mouth advertising from existing viewers. If we do not grow as expected, we may not be able to adjust our expenditures or increase our revenues commensurate with the lowered growth rate such that our margins, liquidity and results of operation may be adversely impacted. If we are unable to successfully compete with current and new competitors in both retaining our existing viewers and attracting new viewers, our business may be adversely affected.

Changes in competitive offerings for entertainment video could adversely impact our business.

The market for entertainment video is subject to rapid change. Through new and existing distribution channels, consumers have increasing options to access entertainment video. The various economic models underlying these channels include subscription, transactional, and ad-supported models. All of these have the potential to capture meaningful segments of the entertainment video market. Traditional providers of entertainment video, including broadcasters and cable network operators, as well as internet-based e-commerce or entertainment video providers are increasing their streaming video offerings. Several of these competitors have long operating histories, large customer bases, strong brand recognition, exclusive rights to certain content and significant financial, marketing and other resources. Competitors may secure better terms from content suppliers and devote more resources to product development, technology, infrastructure, content acquisitions and marketing. New entrants may enter the market or existing providers may adjust their services with unique offerings or approaches to providing entertainment video. Our competitors also may enter into business combinations or alliances that strengthen their competitive positions. If we are unable to successfully or profitably compete with current and new competitors, our business may be adversely affected, and we may not be able to increase or maintain market share, revenues or profitability.

Our long-term results of operations are difficult to predict and depend on the commercial success of our VOD platforms as well as successful monetization of our video content in other ways and the continued strength of the Chicken Soup for the Soul brand.

Video streaming is a rapidly evolving industry, making our business and prospects difficult to evaluate. The growth and profitability of this industry and the level of demand and market acceptance for our VOD platforms and content offerings are subject to a high degree of uncertainty. We believe that the continued growth of streaming as an entertainment alternative will depend on the availability and growth of cost-effective broadband internet access, the quality of broadband content delivery, the quality and reliability of new devices and technology, the cost for viewers relative to other sources of content, as well as the quality and breadth of content that is delivered across streaming platforms. These technologies, products and content offerings continue to emerge and evolve. In addition, many advertisers continue to devote a substantial portion of their advertising budgets to traditional advertising, such as linear TV, radio and print. The future growth of our business depends on the growth of digital advertising, and on advertisers increasing their spend on such advertising. We cannot be certain that they will do so. If advertisers do not perceive meaningful benefits of digital advertising, the market may develop more slowly than we expect, which could adversely impact our operating results and our ability to grow our business.

In addition, monetization of content that we produce and acquire from sources other than our AVOD network is an essential element of our strategy. Our ability in the long-term to obtain sponsorships, licensing arrangements, co-productions and tax credits and to distribute our original programming and acquired video content will depend, in part, upon the commercial success of the content that we initially produce and distribute and, in part, on the continued strength of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand. We cannot ensure that we will produce, acquire, and distribute successful content. The continued strength of the brand will be affected in large part by the operations of CSS and its other business operations, none of which we control. CSS utilizes the brand through its other subsidiaries for various commercial purposes, including the sale of books (including educational curriculum products), pet foods and other consumer products. Negative publicity relating to CSS or its other subsidiaries or the brand, or any diminution in the perception of the brand could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects. We cannot assure you that we will manage the production and distribution of all of our video content successfully, that all or any portion of our video content will be met with critical acclaim or will be embraced by audiences on a one-time or repeated basis, or that the strength of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand will not diminish over time.

We may not be successful in our efforts to further monetize our VOD services

Our AVOD platforms generate revenue primarily from digital advertising and audience development campaigns that run across our streaming platform and from content distribution services. Our ability to deliver more relevant advertisements to our viewers and to increase our platform's value to advertisers and content publishers depends on the collection of user engagement data, which may be restricted or prevented by a number of factors. Viewers may decide to opt out or restrict our ability to collect personal viewing data or to provide them with more relevant advertisements. While we have experienced, and expect to continue to experience, growth in our revenue from advertising, our efforts to monetize our streaming platform through the distribution of AVOD content are still developing and our advertising revenue may not grow as we expect. This means of monetization will require us to continue to attract advertising dollars to our streaming platform as well as deliver AVOD content that appeals to viewers. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that we will be successful in monetizing our streaming platform through the distribution of ad-supported content.

In addition, with the recent spread of the coronavirus throughout the United States and the rest of the world, companies advertising plans and amounts available for advertising may be significantly restricted or discontinued which could also impact our ability to monetize our AVOD platform.

Our reliance on third parties for content, production and distribution could limit our control over the quality of the finished video content.

We currently have limited production capabilities and are reliant on relationships with third parties for much of these capabilities. Working with third parties is an integral part of our strategy to produce video content on a cost-efficient basis, and our reliance on such third parties could lessen the control we have over the projects. Should the third-party producers we rely upon not produce completed projects to the standards we expect and desire, critical and audience acceptance of such projects could suffer, which could have an adverse effect on our ability to produce and distribute future projects. In particular, due to the global spread of COVID-19, and in response to government mandates and healthcare advisories, certain of our vendors and partners have had their operations altered or temporarily suspended, including vendors that supply us with our streaming content and partners that we use for the development and production of content. Any such production pauses could cause us to have less new content available on our service, which could negatively impact consumer demand for our service, which may in turn adversely impact our advertising revenue. A limited number of content publishers account for a significant portion of the hours streamed on our Crackle Plus and other streaming platforms. If, for any reason, these publishers fail to provide us with content, whether due to the COVID-19 pandemic or otherwise, our streaming hours, active viewers, and advertising revenue may be adversely affected, and our business may be harmed. Further, either during the COVID-19 pandemic or after it subsides, we cannot be assured of entering into favorable agreements with third-party content producers on economically favorable terms or on terms that provide us with satisfactory intellectual property rights in the completed projects.

An integral part of our strategy is to initially minimize our production, content acquisition and distribution costs by utilizing funding sources provided by others, however, such sources may not be readily available.

The production acquisition and distribution of video content can require a significant amount of capital. As part of our strategy, we seek to fund the production, content acquisition, and distribution of our video content through co-productions, tax credits, upfront fees from sponsors, licensors, broadcasters, cable and satellite outlets and other producers and distributors, as well as through other initiatives. Such funding from the aforementioned sources or other sources may not be available on attractive terms or at all, as and when we need such funding. To the extent we are not able to secure agreements of this sort, we may need to curtail the amount of video content being produced or acquired by us or use our operating or other funds to pay for such video content, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Due to the effect of the coronavirus, the interest and ability of sponsors to enter into and invest in co-production agreements may not be attractive or considered at this time.

As we grow, we may seek to fund and produce more of our video content directly, subjecting us to significant additional risks.

Our current strategy of funding the production, acquisition, and distribution of our video content through the payment of upfront fees by third parties may limit the backend return to us. If we should determine to use our own funds to produce, acquire, and distribute more of our video content in order to capture greater backend returns, we would face significant additional risks, such as the need to internally advance funds ahead of revenue generation and cost recoupment and the need to divert some of our resources and efforts away from other operations. In order to reduce these risks, we may determine to raise additional equity or incur additional indebtedness. In such event, our stockholders and our company will be subjected to the risks associated with issuing more equity or increasing our debt obligations.

If studios, content providers or other rights holders are unable or refuse to license content or other rights upon terms acceptable to us, our business could be adversely affected.

Our ability to provide content depends on studios, content providers and other rights holders licensing rights to distribute such content and certain related elements thereof, such as the public performance of music contained within the content we distribute. If studios, content providers and other rights holders are not or are no longer willing or able to license us content upon terms acceptable to us, our ability to provide content will be adversely affected and/or our costs could increase.

Certain conflicts of interest may arise between us and our affiliated companies and we have waived certain rights with respect thereto.

Our certificate of incorporation includes a provision stating that we renounce any interest or expectancy in any business opportunities that are presented to us or our officers, directors or stockholders or affiliates thereof, including but not limited to CSS Productions and its affiliates (collectively, the "CSS Companies"), except as may be set forth in any written agreement between us and any of the CSS Companies (such as the CSS License Agreement under which CSS has agreed that all video content operations shall be conducted only through CSS Entertainment). This provision also states that, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law, our officers, directors and employees shall not be liable to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for breach of any fiduciary duty by reason of any of our activities or any activities of any of the CSS Companies. As a result of these provisions, there may be conflicts of interest among us and our officers, directors, stockholders or their affiliates, including the CSS Companies, relating to business opportunities, and we have waived our right to monetary damages in the event of any such conflict.

We are required to make continuing payments to our affiliates, which may reduce our cash flow and profits.

We are required to make significant payments to our affiliates as described under “*Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations — Affiliate Resources and Obligations — CSS Management Agreement*”, “*CSS License Agreement*” and described under “*Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations — Liquidity and Capital Resources*” in our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the three months ended March 31, 2020. Accordingly, in the aggregate, 10% of our net revenue will be paid to our affiliates on a continuous basis and will not be otherwise available to us.

If a project we are producing incurs substantial budget overruns, we may have to seek additional financing from outside sources to complete production or fund the overrun ourselves.

If a production we are funding incurs substantial budget overruns, we may have to seek additional financing from outside sources to complete production or fund the overrun ourselves. We cannot be certain that any required financing will be available to us on commercially reasonable terms or at all, or that we will be able to recoup the costs of overruns. Increased costs incurred with respect to a project may result in the production not being ready for release at the intended time, which could cause a decline in the commercial performance of the project. Budget overruns could also prevent a project from being completed or released at all and adversely affect our operating results.

We are subject to risks associated with possible acquisitions, business combinations, or joint ventures.

We are actively pursuing discussions and activities with respect to possible acquisitions, sale of assets, business combinations, or joint ventures intended to complement or expand our business, some of which may be significant transactions for us. We may not realize the anticipated benefit from any of the transactions we pursue. Regardless of whether we consummate any such transaction, the negotiation of a potential transaction could require us to incur significant costs and cause diversion of management’s time and resources.

Integrating any business that we acquire may be distracting to our management and disruptive to our business and may result in significant costs to us. We could face several challenges in the consolidation and integration of information technology, accounting systems, personnel and operations. Any such transaction could also result in impairment of goodwill and other intangibles, development write-offs and other related expenses. Any of the foregoing could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Our operating results may fluctuate.

Our operating results are dependent, in part, on management’s estimates of revenue to be earned over the life of a project. We will regularly review and revise our revenue estimates. This review may result in a change in the rate of amortization and/or a write-down of the video content asset to its estimated realizable value. Results of operations in future years depend upon our amortization of our video content costs. Periodic adjustments in amortization rates may significantly affect these results. Further, as many of our third-party relationships will be on a project-by-project basis, the profits, if any, generated from various projects will fluctuate based on the terms of the agreements between us and our third-party producers and distributors.

Variations in our quarterly and year-end operating results are difficult to predict and our income and cash flows may fluctuate significantly from period to period, which may impact our board of directors’ willingness or legal ability to declare a monthly dividend. If our operating results fall below the expectations of investors or securities analysts, the price of our Common Stock and our Series A preferred stock could decline substantially. Specific factors that may cause fluctuations in our operating results include:

- demand and pricing for our products and services;
- introduction of competing products;
- our operating expenses which fluctuate due to growth of our business;

- timing and popularity of new video content offerings and changes in viewing habits or the emergence of new content distribution platforms;
- variable sales cycle and implementation periods for content and services; and
- the continuing effects of the COVID-19 pandemic and governmental responses thereto.

As a result of the foregoing and other factors, our results of operations may fluctuate significantly from period to period, and the results of any one period may not be indicative of the results for any future period.

Distributors' failure to promote our video content could adversely affect our revenue and could adversely affect our business results.

We will not always control the timing and way in which our licensed distributors distribute our video content offerings. However, their decisions regarding the timing of release and promotional support are important in determining our success. Any decision by those distributors not to distribute or promote our video content or to promote our competitors' video content to a greater extent than they promote our content could adversely affect our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

We are smaller and less diversified than many of our competitors.

Many of the producers and studios with which we compete are part of large diversified corporate groups with a variety of other operations, including television networks, cable channels and other diversified companies such as Amazon, which can provide both the means of distributing their products and stable sources of earnings that may allow them to better offset fluctuations in the financial performance of their operations. In addition, the major studios have more resources with which to compete for ideas, storylines and scripts created by third parties as well as for actors, and other personnel required for production. The resources of the major producers and studios may also give them an advantage in acquiring other businesses or assets, including video content libraries, that we might also be interested in acquiring.

We face risks from doing business internationally.

We intend to increase the distribution of our video content outside the U.S. and thereby derive significant revenue in foreign jurisdictions. As a result, our business is subject to certain risks inherent in international business, many of which are beyond our control. These risks include:

- laws and policies affecting trade, investment and taxes, including laws and policies relating to the repatriation of funds and withholding taxes, and changes in these laws;
- the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and similar laws regulating interactions and dealings with foreign government officials;
- changes in local regulatory requirements, including restrictions on video content;
- differing cultural tastes and attitudes;
- differing and more stringent user protection, data protection, privacy and other laws;
- differing degrees of protection for intellectual property;
- financial instability and increased market concentration of buyers in foreign television markets;
- the instability of foreign economies and governments;
- fluctuating foreign exchange rates;
- the spread of communicable diseases in such jurisdictions, which may impact business in such jurisdictions; and
- war and acts of terrorism.

Events or developments related to these and other risks associated with international trade could adversely affect our revenue from non-U.S. sources, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Protecting and defending against intellectual property claims may have a material adverse effect on our business.

Our ability to compete depends, in part, upon successful protection of our intellectual property relating to our video content and the protection of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand. We protect proprietary and intellectual property rights to our productions through available copyright and trademark laws and licensing and distribution arrangements with reputable international companies in specific territories and media. Under the terms of the CSS License Agreement, CSS has the primary right to take actions to protect the Brand, and, if it does not, and we reasonably deem any infringement thereof is materially harmful to our business, we may elect to seek action to protect the Brand ourselves. Although in the former case, we would equitably share in any recovery, and in the latter case, we would retain the entirety of any recovery, should CSS determine not to prosecute infringement of the Brand, we could be materially harmed and could incur substantial cost in prosecuting an infringement of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand.

Others may assert intellectual property infringement claims against us.

It is possible that others may claim from time to time that our productions and production techniques misappropriate or infringe the intellectual property rights of third parties with respect to their previously developed content, stories, characters and other entertainment or intellectual property. Although CSS is obligated to indemnify us for claims related to our use of the *Chicken Soup for the Soul* brand in accordance with the CSS License Agreement, we could face lawsuits with respect to claims relating thereto. Irrespective of the validity or the successful assertion of any such claims, we could incur significant costs and diversion of resources in defending against them, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Our business involves risks of liability claims for video content, which could adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

As a producer and distributor of video content, we may face potential liability for defamation, invasion of privacy, negligence and other claims based on the nature and content of the materials distributed. These types of claims have been brought, sometimes successfully, against producers and distributors of video content. Any imposition of liability that is not covered by insurance or is in excess of insurance coverage could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Piracy of video content may harm our business.

Video content piracy is extensive in many parts of the world, including South America, Asia, and certain Eastern European countries, and is made easier by technological advances and the conversion of video content into digital formats. This trend facilitates the creation, transmission and sharing of high-quality unauthorized copies of video content on DVDs, Blu-ray discs, from pay-per-view through set-top boxes and other devices and through unlicensed broadcasts on free television and the internet. The proliferation of unauthorized copies of our video content could have an adverse effect on our business.

Any significant disruption in the computer systems of third parties that we utilize in our operations could result in a loss or degradation of service and could adversely impact our business.

Our reputation and ability to attract, retain and serve our viewers is dependent upon the reliable performance of the computer systems of third parties that we utilize in our operations. These systems may be subject to damage or interruption from earthquakes, adverse weather conditions, other natural disasters, terrorist attacks, power loss, telecommunications failures, computer viruses, computer denial of service attacks or other attempts to harm these systems. Interruptions in these systems or to the internet in general, could make our content unavailable or impair our ability to deliver such content.

Our online activities are subject to a variety of laws and regulations relating to privacy, which, if violated, could subject us to an increased risk of litigation and regulatory actions.

In addition to our websites, we use third-party applications, websites, and social media platforms to promote our video content offerings and engage consumers, as well as monitor and collect certain information about consumers. There are a variety of laws and regulations governing individual privacy and the protection and use of information collected from such individuals, particularly in relation to an individual's personally identifiable information. The United States is seeing the adoption of state-level laws governing individual privacy. This includes the California Consumer Protection Act ("CCPA"). Many foreign countries have adopted similar laws governing individual privacy, such as the recent adoption of the EU's General Data Protection Regulation ("GDPR") and some of which are more restrictive than similar United States laws. If our online activities were to violate any applicable current or future laws and regulations that limit our ability to collect, transfer, and use data, we could be subject to litigation from both private rights of action, class action lawsuits, and regulatory actions, including fines and other penalties. Internationally, we may become subject to evolving, additional and/or more stringent legal obligations concerning our treatment of customer and other personal information, such as laws regarding data localization and/or restrictions on data export. Failure to comply with these obligations could subject us to liability, and to the extent that we need to alter our business model or practices to adapt to these obligations, we could incur additional expenses.

If government regulations relating to the internet or other areas of our business change, we may need to alter the way we conduct our business or incur greater operating expenses.

The adoption or modification of laws or regulations relating to the internet or other areas of our business could limit or otherwise adversely affect the way we currently conduct our business. In addition, the continued growth and development of the market for online commerce may lead to more stringent consumer protection laws, which may impose additional burdens on us such as recent adoption of the European Union's General Data Protection Regulation. If we are required to comply with new regulations or legislation or new interpretations of existing regulations or legislation, this compliance could cause us to incur additional expenses or alter our operations.

If we experience rapid growth, we may not manage our growth effectively, execute our business plan as proposed or adequately address competitive challenges.

We anticipate continuing to grow our business and operations rapidly. Our growth strategy includes organic initiatives and acquisitions. Such growth could place a significant strain on the management, administrative, operational and financial infrastructure we utilize, a portion of which is made available to us by our affiliates under the Management Agreement between us and CSS ("CSS Management Agreement"). Our long-term success will depend, in part, on our ability to manage this growth effectively, obtain the necessary support and resources under the CSS Management Agreement and grow our own internal resources as required, including internal management and staff personnel. To manage the expected growth of our operations and personnel, we also will need to increase our internal operational, financial and management controls, and our reporting systems and procedures. Failure to effectively manage growth could result in difficulty or delays in producing our video content, declines in overall project quality and increases in costs. Any of these difficulties could adversely impact our business financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Our exclusive license to use the Chicken Soup for the Soul brand could be terminated in certain circumstances.

We do not own the Chicken Soup for the Soul brand or any other Chicken Soup for the Soul-related assets (including books), other than those assets transferred to us under the CSS Contribution Agreement. The Brand is licensed to us by CSS under the terms of the CSS License Agreement. CSS controls the Brand, and the continued integrity and strength of the Chicken Soup for the Soul brand will depend in large part on the efforts and businesses of CSS and how the brand is used, promoted and protected by CSS, which will be outside of the immediate control of our company. Although the license granted to us under the CSS License Agreement is perpetual, it may be terminated by CSS upon the cessation of our business, our bankruptcy, liquidation, or insolvency, or if we fail to pay any sums due or otherwise fail to perform under the License Agreement within 30 days following delivery of a second written notice by CSS.

We may not be able to realize the entire book value of goodwill and other intangible assets from the formation of Crackle Plus and other acquisitions.

As of December 31, 2019 and March 31, 2020, we had approximately \$21.4 million of goodwill and approximately \$47.6 million and \$42.4 million, respectively, of net intangible assets, primarily related to the formation of Crackle Plus and other acquisitions. We assess goodwill and other intangible assets for impairment at least annually and more frequently if certain events or circumstances warrant. If the book value of goodwill or other intangible assets is impaired, any such impairment would be charged to earnings in the period of impairment. If we determine that goodwill and other intangible assets are impaired in the future, it could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Claims against us relating to any acquisition or business combination may necessitate our seeking claims against the seller for which the seller may not indemnify us or that may exceed the seller's indemnification obligations.

There may be liabilities assumed in any acquisition or business combination that we did not discover or that we underestimated in the course of performing our due diligence. Although a seller generally may have indemnification obligations to us under an acquisition or merger agreement, these obligations usually will be subject to financial limitations, such as general deductibles and maximum recovery amounts, as well as time limitations. We cannot assure you that our right to indemnification from any seller will be enforceable, collectible or sufficient in amount, scope or duration to fully offset the amount of any undiscovered or underestimated liabilities that we may incur. Any such liabilities, individually or in the aggregate, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

We may require and not be able to obtain additional funding to meet increased capital needs after an acquisition.

Our ability to grow through acquisitions, business combinations and joint ventures and our ability to fund our operating expenses after one or more acquisitions may depend upon our ability to obtain funds through equity financing, debt financing (including credit facilities) or the sale or syndication of some or all of our interests in certain projects or other assets or businesses. If we do not have access to such financing arrangements, and if other funds do not become available on terms acceptable to us, there could be a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Our success depends on our management and relationships with our affiliated companies.

Our success depends to a significant extent on the performance of our management personnel and key employees, including production and creative personnel, made available to us through the CSS Management Agreement. The loss of the services of such persons or the resources supplied to us by our affiliated companies could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

To be successful, we need to attract and retain qualified personnel.

Our success will depend to a significant extent on our ability to identify, attract, hire, train and retain qualified professional, creative, technical and managerial personnel. Competition for the caliber of talent required to produce and distribute our video content continues to increase. We cannot assure you that we will be successful in identifying, attracting, hiring, training and retaining such personnel in the future. If we were unable to hire, assimilate and retain qualified personnel in the future, such inability could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

We are an “emerging growth company” under the JOBS Act of 2012 and we cannot be certain if the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies will make our Class A common stock less attractive to investors.

We are an “emerging growth company”, as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (“JOBS Act”), and we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies” including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a non-binding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We cannot predict if investors will find our Class A common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our Class A common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our Class A common stock and our stock price may be more volatile.

In addition, Section 107 of the JOBS Act also provides that an “emerging growth company” can take advantage of the extended transition period provided in Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act for complying with new or revised accounting standards. In other words, an “emerging growth company” can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We are choosing to take advantage of the extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards.

We will remain an “emerging growth company” for up to five years, although we will lose that status sooner if our revenue exceeds \$1.07 billion, if we issue more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt in a three-year period, or if the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of June 30 of any year.

Our status as an “emerging growth company” under the JOBS Act of 2012 may make it more difficult to raise capital as and when we need it.

Because of the exemptions from various reporting requirements provided to us as an “emerging growth company” and because we will have an extended transition period for complying with new or revised financial accounting standards, we may be less attractive to investors and it may be difficult for us to raise additional capital as and when we need it. Investors may be unable to compare our business with other companies in our industry if they believe that our financial accounting is not as transparent as other companies in our industry. Any inability to raise additional capital as and when we need it, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results, liquidity and prospects.

Since our content is digitally stored and distributed online, and we accept online payments for various subscription services, we face numerous cybersecurity risks.

We utilize information technology systems, including third-party hosted servers and cloud-based servers, to host our digital content, as well as to keep business, financial, and corporate records, communicate internally and externally, and operate other critical functions. If any of our internal systems or the systems of our third-party providers are compromised due to computer virus, unauthorized access, malware, and the like, then sensitive documents could be exposed or deleted, and our ability to conduct business could be impaired.

Cyber incidents can result from deliberate attacks or unintentional events. These incidents can include, but are not limited to, unauthorized access to our systems, computer viruses or other malicious code, denial of service attacks, malware, ransomware, phishing, SQL injection attacks, human error, or other events that result in security breaches or give rise to the manipulation or loss of sensitive information or assets. Cyber incidents can be caused by various persons or groups, including disgruntled employees and vendors, activists, organized crime groups, and state-sponsored and individual hackers. Cyber incidents can also be caused or aggravated by natural events, such as earthquakes, floods, fires, power loss, and telecommunications failures.

To date, we have not experienced any material losses relating to cyber-attacks, computer viruses, or other systems failures. Although we have taken steps to protect the security of data maintained in our information systems, it is possible that our security measures will not be able to prevent the systems' improper functioning or the improper disclosure of personally identifiable information, such as in the event of cyber-attacks. In addition to operational and business consequences, if our cybersecurity is breached, we could be held liable to our customers or other parties in regulatory or other actions, and we may be exposed to reputation damages and loss of trust and business. This could result in costly investigations and litigation, civil or criminal penalties, fines, and negative publicity.

Certain information relating to our customers, including personally identifiable information and credit card numbers, is collected and maintained by us, or by third parties that do business with us or facilitate our business activities. This information is maintained for a period of time for various business purposes, including maintaining records of customer preferences to enhance our customer service and for billing, marketing, and promotional purposes. We also maintain personally identifiable information about our employees. The integrity and protection of our customer, employee and company data is critical to our business. Our customers and our employees expect that we will adequately protect their personal information, and the regulations applicable to security and privacy are increasingly demanding. Privacy regulation is an evolving area and compliance with applicable privacy regulations may increase our operating costs or adversely impact our ability to service our customers and market our properties and services.

The occurrence of natural or man-made disasters could result in declines in business that could adversely affect our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

We are exposed to various risks arising out of natural disasters, including earthquakes, hurricanes, fires, floods, landslides, tornadoes, typhoons, tsunamis, hailstorms, explosions, climate events or weather patterns and pandemic health events (such as the recent pandemic spread of the novel corona virus known as COVID-19 virus, duration and full effects of which are still uncertain), as well as man-made disasters, including acts of terrorism, military actions, cyber-terrorism, explosions and biological, chemical or radiological events. The continued threat of terrorism and ongoing military actions may cause significant volatility in global financial markets, and a natural or man-made disaster could trigger an economic downturn in the areas directly or indirectly affected by the disaster. These consequences could, among other things, result in a decline in business. Disasters also could disrupt public and private infrastructure, including communications and financial services, which could disrupt our normal business operations. A natural or man-made disaster also could disrupt the operations of our partners and counterparties or result in increased prices for the products and services they provide to us.

Our chairman and chief executive officer effectively controls our company.

We have two classes of common stock — Class A common stock, each share of which entitles the holder thereof to one vote on any matter submitted to our stockholders, and Class B common stock, each share of which entitles the holder thereof to ten votes on any matter submitted to our stockholders. Our chairman and chief executive officer, William J. Rouhana, Jr., has control over the vast majority of all the outstanding voting power as represented by our outstanding Class B and Class A common stock and effectively controls CSS Holdings and CSS, which controls CSS Productions, and, in turn, our company. Further, our bylaws provide that any member of our board may be removed with or without cause by the majority of our outstanding voting power, thus Mr. Rouhana exerts significant control over our board. This concentration of ownership and decision making may make it more difficult for other stockholders to effect substantial changes in our company and may also have the effect of delaying, preventing or expediting, as the case may be, a change in control of our company.

Risks Related to the Offering

The Notes will be unsecured and therefore are effectively subordinated to any secured indebtedness we have incurred or may incur in the future.

The Notes will not be secured by any of our assets. As a result, the Notes will be effectively subordinated to all of our existing and future secured indebtedness, such as any new loan facility or other indebtedness to which we grant a security interest, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. In any liquidation, dissolution, bankruptcy or other similar proceeding, the holders of any of our existing or future secured indebtedness may assert rights against the assets pledged to secure that indebtedness in order to receive full payment of their indebtedness before the assets may be used to pay other creditors, including the holders of the Notes.

The Notes will be structurally subordinated to the existing and future indebtedness and other liabilities of our subsidiaries.

The Notes will be obligations exclusively of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., and not any of our subsidiaries. In addition, the Notes will not be guaranteed by any third-party, whether an affiliate or unrelated to us. None of the assets of our subsidiaries will be directly available to satisfy the claims of holders of the Notes. Except to the extent we are a creditor with recognized claims against our subsidiaries, all claims of creditors of our subsidiaries will have priority over our equity interests in such entities (and therefore the claims of our creditors, including holders of the Notes) with respect to the assets of such entities. Even if we are recognized as a creditor of one or more of these entities, our claims would still be effectively subordinated to any security interests in the assets of any such entity and to any indebtedness or other liabilities of any such entity senior to our claims. Consequently, the Notes will be structurally subordinated to all indebtedness and other liabilities of any of our subsidiaries, including, for example, the unsecured \$5,000,000 revolving credit facility between Landmark Studio Group, as borrower, and Cole Investments VII LLC, as lender. In addition, our subsidiaries and these entities may incur substantial indebtedness in the future, all of which would be structurally senior to the Notes.

The indenture under which the Notes are issued contains limited protection for holders of the Notes.

The indenture under which the Notes are issued offers limited protection to holders of the Notes. The terms of the indenture and the Notes do not restrict our ability to engage in, or otherwise be a party to, a variety of corporate transactions, circumstances or events that could have a material adverse impact on your investment in the Notes. In particular, except in limited circumstances, the terms of the indenture and the Notes do not restrict our ability to:

- issue securities or otherwise incur additional indebtedness or other obligations, including (1) any indebtedness or other obligations that would be equal or senior in right of payment to the Notes, (2) any indebtedness or other obligations that would be secured and therefore rank effectively senior in right of payment to the Notes to the extent of the values of the assets securing such debt, (3) indebtedness that we incur that is guaranteed by one or more of our subsidiaries and which therefore is structurally senior to the Notes and (4) securities, indebtedness or obligations issued or incurred by our subsidiaries that would be senior to our equity interests in those entities and therefore rank structurally senior to the Notes with respect to the assets of these entities;
- pay dividends on, or purchase or redeem or make any payments in respect of, capital stock or other securities ranking junior in right of payment to the Notes, including our Series A Preferred Stock or any subordinated indebtedness;
- sell assets (other than certain limited restrictions on our ability to consolidate, merge or sell all or substantially all of our assets);
- enter into transactions with affiliates;
- create liens or enter into sale and leaseback transactions;
- make investments; or
- create restrictions on the payment of dividends or other amounts to us from our subsidiaries.

In addition, the indenture does not require us to offer to purchase the Notes in connection with a change of control or any other event (but does afford us the right to redeem the Notes prior to the prescribed redemption date upon the consummation of certain transactions).

Similarly, the terms of the indenture and the Notes do not protect holders of the Notes in the event that we experience changes (including significant adverse changes) in our financial condition, results of operations or credit ratings, if any.

Our ability to recapitalize, incur additional debt and take a number of other actions that are not limited by the terms of the Notes may have important consequences for you as a holder of the Notes, including making it more difficult for us to satisfy our obligations with respect to the Notes or negatively affecting the trading value of the Notes.

Other debt we issue or incur in the future could contain more protections for its holders than the indenture and the Notes, including additional covenants and events of default. For example, the indenture under which the Notes are issued does not contain cross-default provisions. The issuance or incurrence of any indebtedness with incremental protections could affect the market for and trading levels and prices of the Notes. Additionally, even if we issue indebtedness that ranks equally with the Notes, the holders of such indebtedness will be entitled to share ratably with you any proceeds distributed in connection with any insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, or dissolution, which may have the effect of reducing the amount of proceeds paid to you. Incurrence of additional debt would also further reduce the cash available to invest in operations, as a result of increased debt service obligations, and may cause a cross-default on our other obligations, as described elsewhere in these Risk Factors. If new debt is added to our current indebtedness, the related risks that we now face could be compounded.

An increase in market interest rates could result in a decrease in the value of the Notes.

In general, as market interest rates rise, notes bearing interest at a fixed rate decline in value. Consequently, if you purchase the Notes, and the market interest rates subsequently increase, the market value of your Notes may decline. We cannot predict the future level of market interest rates.

There is no existing trading market for the Notes, and, even if Nasdaq approves the listing of the Notes, an active trading market for the Notes may not develop, which could limit your ability to sell the Notes and/or the market price of the Notes.

The Notes will be a new issue of debt securities for which there initially will not be a trading market. Although we intend to list the Notes on the Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol “[*]” and expect trading to commence within 30 days of the original issue date, we cannot assure you that the Notes will be approved for listing on Nasdaq.

Moreover, even if the listing of the Notes is approved, we cannot provide any assurances that an active trading market will develop or be maintained for the Notes or that you will be able to sell your Notes. If the Notes are traded after their initial issuance, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering price depending on prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities, our credit ratings, if any, general economic conditions, our financial condition, performance and prospects and other factors. The underwriters have advised us that they intend to make a market in the Notes, but they are not obligated to do so. The underwriters may discontinue any market-making in the Notes at any time at their sole discretion.

We cannot assure you that the Notes will be approved for listing on Nasdaq, that a liquid trading market will develop for the Notes, that you will be able to sell your Notes at a particular time or that the price you receive when you sell will be favorable. To the extent an active trading market does not develop, the liquidity and trading price for the Notes may be harmed. Accordingly, you may be required to bear the financial risk of an investment in the Notes for an indefinite period of time.

We may choose to redeem the Notes when prevailing interest rates are relatively low.

On or after [*] 2022, we may choose to redeem the Notes from time to time, especially when prevailing interest rates are lower than the rate borne by the Notes. If prevailing rates are lower at the time of redemption, you would not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in a comparable security at an effective interest rate as high as the interest rate on the Notes being redeemed. Our redemption right also may adversely impact your ability to sell the Notes as the optional redemption date or period approaches.

If we default on our obligations to pay our other indebtedness, we may not be able to make payments on the Notes.

Any default under the agreements governing our existing or future indebtedness that is not waived by the required lenders, and the remedies sought by the holders of such indebtedness, could make us unable to pay principal and interest on the Notes and substantially decrease the market value of the Notes. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow and are otherwise unable to obtain funds necessary to meet required payments of principal and interest on our indebtedness, or if we otherwise fail to comply with the various covenants, including financial and operating covenants, in the instruments governing our indebtedness, we could be in default under the terms of the agreements governing such indebtedness, including the Notes. In the event of such default, the holders of such indebtedness could elect to declare all the funds borrowed thereunder to be due and payable, together with accrued and unpaid interest. In addition, the lenders under any loan facility or other financing that we may obtain in the future could elect to terminate their commitment, cease making further loans and institute foreclosure proceedings against our assets, and we could be forced into bankruptcy or liquidation. Any such default may constitute a default under the Notes, which could further limit our ability to repay our indebtedness, including the Notes. If our operating performance declines, we may in the future need to seek to obtain waivers from our existing lenders at the time to avoid being in default. If we breach any loan covenants, we may not be able to obtain such a waiver from the lenders. If this occurs, we would be in default under the credit arrangement that we have, the lender could exercise its rights as described above, and we could be forced into bankruptcy or liquidation. If we are unable to repay indebtedness, lenders having secured obligations could proceed against the collateral securing their debt. Because any future credit facilities will likely have, customary cross-default provisions, if the indebtedness under the Notes, or under any future credit facility is accelerated, we may be unable to repay or finance the amounts due.

We will use the proceeds of this offering to repay existing indebtedness and may use a portion of the proceeds to satisfy certain payment obligations to CPE Holdings, and other affiliates of Sony Pictures Television, Inc., and will have broad discretion with respect to the use of any remaining proceeds.

We will use approximately \$13.9 million of the net proceeds from this offering to repay in its entirety the outstanding principal and interest we owed under our commercial loan facility with Patriot Bank, N.A. We may also use a portion of the proceeds to fund a portion of our obligation to pay certain obligations to CPE Holdings, Inc., an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc., and other affiliates thereof. Accordingly, the portion of the proceeds of this offering used for the foregoing purposes shall not be available to us to fund the operation of our business or for other purposes. We will use any remaining proceeds for general working capital and will have broad discretion with respect to the use of such proceeds and you will not have the opportunity as part of your investment decision to determine how such proceeds will be used. Because of the number and variability of factors that will determine how we use such remaining net proceeds from this offering, their ultimate use may vary. The failure by us to apply these funds effectively could harm our business.

We are not obligated to contribute to a sinking fund to retire the Notes and the Notes are not guaranteed by a third-party.

We are not obligated to contribute funds to a sinking fund to repay principal or interest on the Notes upon maturity or default. The Notes are not certificates of deposit or similar obligations of, or guaranteed by, any depository institution. Further, no private party or governmental entity insures or guarantees payment on the Notes if we do not have enough funds to make principal or interest payments.

A downgrade, suspension or withdrawal of the credit rating assigned by a rating agency to us or the Notes, if any, could cause the liquidity or market value of the Notes to decline significantly.

Our credit rating is an assessment by third parties of our ability to pay our obligations. Consequently, real or anticipated changes in our credit rating will generally affect the market value of the Notes. Our credit rating, however, may not reflect the potential impact of risks related to market conditions generally or other factors discussed above on the market value of or trading market for the Notes. Credit ratings are not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold any security, and may be revised or withdrawn at any time by the issuing organization in its sole discretion.

The Notes have received a rating of BBB from Egan-Jones Ratings Company. An explanation of the significance of ratings may be obtained from the rating agency. Generally, rating agencies base their ratings on such material and information, and such of their own investigations, studies and assumptions, as they deem appropriate. Neither we nor any underwriter undertakes any obligation to maintain our credit rating or to advise holders of the Notes of any changes in our credit rating. There can be no assurance that our credit rating will remain for any given period of time or that such credit rating will not be lowered or withdrawn entirely by the rating agency if in their judgment future circumstances relating to the basis of the credit rating, such as adverse changes in our company, so warrant.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We will use a portion of the net proceeds from this offering to repay in its entirety the outstanding principal and interest we owed under our commercial loan facility with Patriot Bank, N.A. As of the date of this prospectus the aggregate principal and interest owed by us under such facility was approximately \$13.9 million.

We will use any remaining proceeds for general working capital, which could include the use of some or all of such remaining proceeds to pay certain obligations to CPEH (an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television) and affiliates thereof that may otherwise be payable in shares of our Series A preferred stock.

We may also use a portion of the proceeds allocated to general working capital for payments in connection with acquisitions made by us from time to time.

CAPITALIZATION

The following table shows our cash and cash equivalents and capitalization as of March 31, 2020:

- on an actual basis;
- on a pro forma basis giving effect to the sale of Notes in this offering and the receipt of net proceeds of approximately \$23,400,000 from this offering, after deducting underwriting commissions of \$1,250,000 million and estimated offering expenses payable by us of approximately \$350,000 (assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional Notes), and the use of a portion thereof to repay all outstanding principal and interest owed by us to Patriot Bank, N.A. under our existing commercial loan facility with such bank.

You should read the data set forth in the table below in conjunction with "Use of Proceeds," appearing elsewhere in this prospectus, as well as our unaudited financial statements and the accompanying notes and the section entitled "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," each included in our [Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019](#) and our [Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2020](#), each of which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Any use by us of net proceeds to pay obligations to CPEH (an affiliate of Sony Pictures Television) and its affiliates in lieu of using our Series A preferred stock would reduce the amount of net proceeds otherwise available to us for working capital.

	March 31, 2020	
	Actual	As Adjusted (1)
	(Unaudited)	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 7,121,339	\$ 16,121,339
Total Commercial Loan, Revolving Credit Facility, & Notes Payable:		
Commercial loan and revolving line of credit, net of unamortized deferred finance cost of \$179,373 and \$0 as adjusted, respectively	14,220,627	-
Revolving Credit Facility	5,000,000	5,000,000
Notes Payable due 2025, net of deferred offering costs of \$0 actual and \$1,600,000 as adjusted	-	23,400,000
Total Commercial Loan, Revolving Credit Facility, & Notes Payable	19,220,627	28,400,000
Stockholder's Equity:		
Series A cumulative redeemable perpetual preferred stock, \$0.001 par value, liquidation preference of \$25.00 per share, 10,000,000 shares authorized; 1,599,002 shares issued and outstanding, redemption value of \$39,975,050	160	160
Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value, 70,000,000 shares authorized; 4,267,725 shares issued and 4,193,490 outstanding	426	426
Class B common stock, \$0.0001 par value, 20,000,000 shares authorized; 7,813,938 issued and outstanding	782	782
Additional paid-in capital	87,854,864	87,854,864
Deficit	(44,123,009)	(44,123,009)
Class A common stock held in treasury, at cost (74,235 shares)	(632,729)	(632,729)
Total stockholders' equity	43,100,494	43,100,494
Total Capitalization	\$ 62,321,121	\$ 71,500,494

(1) Reflects the full amount of notes offered under this prospectus, for aggregate net proceeds of \$23,400,000.

The table above is based on:

- 4,193,490 shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding as of March 31, 2020, and excludes, as of such date:
 - o 1,032,500 shares of Class A Common Stock reserved for issuance pursuant to outstanding options and stock awards under our 2017 stock incentive plan ("2017 Plan");
 - o an additional 217,500 shares of Class A Common Stock available for issuance under the 2017 Plan;
 - o 678,822 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our outstanding Class W warrants with an exercise price of \$7.50 per share, 180,618 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our Class Z warrants with an exercise price of \$12.00 per share, 800,000 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our outstanding Class I Warrants with an exercise price of \$8.13 per share, 1,200,000 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our Class II Warrants with an exercise price of \$9.67 per share, 380,000 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our Class III-A Warrants with an exercise price of \$11.61 per share, and 1,620,000 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying our Class III-B Warrants with an exercise price of \$11.61 per share.
- 7,813,938 shares of Class B Common Stock outstanding as of March 31, 2020; and
- 1,599,002 shares of Series A Preferred Stock outstanding as of March 31, 2020.

DESCRIPTION OF THE NOTES

The Notes will be issued under the indenture between us and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee, dated [*], 2020 and a first supplemental indenture thereto to be dated [*], 2020, the date of issuance of the Notes, between us and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee. We refer to the indenture and the first supplemental indenture collectively as the “indenture” and to U.S. Bank National Association as the “trustee.” The Notes are governed by the indenture, as required by federal law for all bonds and notes of companies that are publicly offered. An indenture is a contract between us and the financial institution acting as trustee on your behalf and is subject to and governed by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended. The trustee has two main roles. First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if we default. There are some limitations on the extent to which the trustee acts on your behalf, described in the second paragraph under “— *Events of Default — Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs.*” Second, the trustee performs certain administrative duties for us with respect to the Notes.

This section includes a description of the material terms of the Notes and the indenture. Because this section is a summary, however, it does not describe every aspect of the Notes and the indenture. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not this description, defines your rights as a holder of the Notes. The indenture is attached as an exhibit to the Registration Statement on Form S-1 to which this prospectus forms a part.

General

The Notes will mature on [*], 2025. The principal payable at maturity will be 100% of the aggregate outstanding principal amount. The interest rate of the Notes is [*]% per year and will be paid every March 30, June 30, September 30, and December 30, beginning September 30, 2020, and the regular record dates for interest payments will be every March 15, June 15, September 15, and December 15, beginning September 15, 2020. If an interest payment date falls on a non-business day, the applicable interest payment will be made on the next business day and no additional interest will accrue as a result of such delayed payment. The initial interest period will be the period from and including September 30, 2020, to, but excluding, the initial interest payment date, and the subsequent interest periods will be the periods from and including an interest payment date to, but excluding, the next interest payment date or the stated maturity date, as the case may be.

We will issue the Notes in denominations of \$25 and integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof. The Notes will not be subject to any sinking fund and holders of the Notes will not have the option to have the Notes repaid prior to the stated maturity date.

Except as described under the captions “*Events of Default*” and “*Merger or Consolidation*” in this prospectus, the indenture does not contain any provisions that give you protection in the event we issue a large amount of debt or we are acquired by another entity.

Optional Redemption

The Notes may be redeemed in whole or in part at any time or from time to time at our option on or after [*], 2022 (two years from the Original Issue Date) upon not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days written notice by mail prior to the date fixed for redemption thereof. The redemption price shall include (i) 100% of the outstanding principal amount of the Notes called for redemption on the date fixed for redemption plus (ii) all accrued and unpaid interest payments otherwise payable thereon through the date fixed for redemption. In addition, in the event of a merger or sale of the company or substantially all of its assets or a majority of the Company’s equity (on an after issued basis) in one or a series of related transactions, the Company shall have the right to redeem the Notes prior to [*], 2022 in connection with the consummation of such transactions on the foregoing terms.

You may be prevented from exchanging or transferring the Notes when they are subject to redemption. In case any Notes are to be redeemed in part only, the redemption notice will provide that, upon surrender of such Note, you will receive, without a charge, a new Note or Notes of authorized denominations representing the principal amount of your remaining unredeemed Notes. Any exercise of our option to redeem the Notes will be done in accordance with the indenture.

If we redeem only some of the Notes, the trustee will determine the method for selection of the particular Notes to be redeemed, in accordance with the indenture and in accordance with the rules of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which the Notes are listed. Unless we default in payment of the redemption price, on and after the date of redemption, interest will cease to accrue on the Notes called for redemption.

Rating of the Notes

Our Notes have a credit rating of BBB from Egan-Jones Ratings Company. An explanation of the significance of ratings may be obtained from the rating agency. Generally, rating agencies base their ratings on such material and information, and such of their own investigations, studies and assumptions, as they deem appropriate. The rating of the Notes should be evaluated independently from similar ratings of other securities. A credit rating of a security is paid for by the issuer and is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and maybe subject to review, revision, suspension, reduction or withdrawal at any time by the assigning rating agency. See “*Risk Factors — A downgrade, suspension or withdrawal of the credit rating assigned by a rating agency to us or the Notes, if any, could cause the liquidity or market value of the Notes to decline significantly.*”

Global Securities

Each Note will be issued in book-entry form and represented by a global security that we deposit with and register in the name of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, known as DTC, or its nominee. A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depository or its nominee, unless special termination situations arise. As a result of these arrangements, the depository, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and holder of all the Notes represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. For more information about these arrangements, see “— *Book-Entry Procedures*” below.

Termination of a Global Security

If a global security is terminated for any reason, interests in it will be exchanged for certificates in non-book-entry form (certificated securities). After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold the certificated Notes directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in a global security transferred on termination to their own names, so that they will be holders.

Payment and Paying Agents

We will pay interest to the person listed in the trustee’s records as the owner of the Notes at the close of business on a particular day in advance of each due date for interest, even if that person no longer owns the Note on the interest due date. That day, usually about two weeks in advance of the interest due date, is called the “record date.” Because we will pay all the interest for an interest period to the holders on the record date, holders buying and selling the Notes must work out between themselves the appropriate purchase price. The most common manner is to adjust the sales price of the Notes to prorate interest fairly between buyer and seller based on their respective ownership periods within the particular interest period. This prorated interest amount is called “accrued interest.”

Payments on Global Securities

We will make payments on the Notes so long as they are represented by a global security in accordance with the applicable policies of the depository as in effect from time to time. Under those policies, we will make payments directly to the depository, or its nominee, and not to any indirect holders who own beneficial interests in the global security. An indirect holder’s right to those payments will be governed by the rules and practices of the depository and its participants, as described under “— *Book-Entry Procedures.*”

Payments on Certificated Securities

In the event the Notes become represented by certificated securities, we will make payments on the Notes as follows. We will pay interest that is due on an interest payment date to the holder of the Notes as shown on the trustee’s records as of the close of business on the regular record date at our office in New York, New York. We will make all payments of principal and premium, if any, by check at the office of the applicable trustee in New York, New York and/or at other offices that may be specified in the indenture or a notice to holders against surrender of the Note.

Alternatively, at our option, we may pay any cash interest that becomes due on the Notes by mailing a check to the holder at his, her or its address shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date or by transfer to an account at a bank in the United States, in either case, on the due date.

Payment When Offices Are Closed

If any payment is due on the Notes on a day that is not a business day, we will make the payment on the next day that is a business day. Payments made on the next business day in this situation will be treated under the indenture as if they were made on the original due date. Such payment will not result in a default under the Notes or the indenture, and no interest will accrue on the payment amount from the original due date to the next day that is a business day.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive payments on the Notes.

Events of Default

You will have rights if an Event of Default occurs in respect of the Notes, as described later in this subsection.

The term "Event of Default" in respect of the Notes means any of the following:

- We do not pay the principal (or premium, if any) of any Note when due.
- We do not pay interest on any Note when due, and such default is not cured within 30 days.
- We remain in breach of a covenant in respect of the Notes for 60 days after we receive a written notice of default stating we are in breach (the notice must be sent by either the trustee or holders of at least 25% of the principal amount of the Notes).
- We file for bankruptcy or certain other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur and in the case of certain orders or decrees entered against us under bankruptcy law, such order or decree remains undischarged or unstayed for a period of 60 days.

An Event of Default for the Notes does not necessarily constitute an Event of Default for any other series of debt securities issued under the same or any other indenture. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of the Notes of any default, except in the payment of principal or interest, if in good faith considers the withholding of notice to be in the best interests of the holders.

Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs

If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Notes may declare the entire principal amount of all the Notes to be due and immediately payable. This is called a declaration of acceleration of maturity. In certain circumstances, a declaration of acceleration of maturity may be canceled by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Notes if (1) we have deposited with the trustee all amounts due and owing with respect to the Notes (other than principal that has become due solely by reason of such acceleration) and certain other amounts, and (2) any other Events of Default have been cured or waived.

Except in cases of default, where the trustee has some special duties, the trustee is not required to take any action under the indenture at the request of any holders unless the holders offer the trustee protection from expenses and liability (called an "indemnity"). If indemnity is provided, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Notes may direct the time, method and place of conducting any lawsuit or other formal legal action seeking any remedy available to the trustee. The trustee may refuse to follow those directions in certain circumstances. No delay or omission in exercising any right or remedy will be treated as a waiver of that right, remedy or Event of Default.

Before you are allowed to bypass the trustee and bring your own lawsuit or other formal legal action or take other steps to enforce your rights or protect your interests relating to the Notes, the following must occur:

- you must give the trustee written notice that an Event of Default has occurred and remains uncured;
- the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all the Notes must make a written request that the trustee take action because of the default and must offer indemnity and/or security to the trustee against the cost and other liabilities of taking that action;
- the trustee must not have taken action for 60 days after receipt of the above notice and offer of indemnity and/or security; and
- the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Notes must not have given the trustee a direction inconsistent with the above notice during that 60-day period.

However, you are entitled at any time to bring a lawsuit for the payment of money due on your Notes on or after the due date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how to give notice or direction to or make a request of the trustee and how to declare or cancel an acceleration of maturity.

Each year, we will furnish to the trustee a written statement of certain of our officers certifying that to their knowledge we are in compliance with the indenture and the Notes, or else specifying any default.

Waiver of Default

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the Notes may waive any past defaults other than:

- the payment of principal or interest; or
- in respect of a covenant that cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each holder.

Merger or Consolidation

Under the terms of the indenture, we are generally permitted to consolidate or merge with another entity. We are also permitted to sell all or substantially all of our assets to another entity. However, we may not take any of these actions unless all the following conditions are met:

- Where we merge out of existence or convey or transfer our assets substantially as an entirety, the resulting entity must agree to be legally responsible for our obligations under the Notes.
- The merger or sale of assets must not cause a default on the Notes and we must not already be in default (unless the merger or sale would cure the default). For purposes of this no-default test, a default would include an Event of Default that has occurred and has not been cured, as described under “Events of Default” above. A default for this purpose would also include any event that would be an Event of Default if the requirements for giving us a notice of default or our default having to exist for a specific period of time were disregarded.
- We must deliver certain certificates and documents to the trustee.

Modification or Waiver

There are three types of changes we can make to the indenture and the Notes.

Changes Requiring Your Approval

First, there are changes that we cannot make to the Notes without your specific approval. The following is a list of those types of changes:

- change the stated maturity of the principal of or interest on the Notes;
- reduce any amounts due on the Notes;
- reduce the amount of principal payable upon acceleration of the maturity of a Note following a default;
- change the place or currency of payment on a Note;
- impair your right to sue for payment;
- reduce the percentage of holders of Notes whose consent is needed to modify or amend the indenture; and
- reduce the percentage of holders of Notes whose consent is needed to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture or to waive certain defaults.

Changes Not Requiring Approval

The second type of change does not require any vote by the holders of the Notes. This type is limited to clarifications and certain other changes that would not adversely affect holders of the Notes in any material respect.

Changes Requiring Majority Approval

Any other change to the indenture and the Notes would require the following approval:

- if the change affects only the Notes, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Notes; and
- if the change affects more than one series of debt securities issued under the same indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series affected by the change, with all affected series voting together as one class for this purpose.

In both cases, the required approval must be given by written consent.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series of debt securities issued under an indenture, voting together as one class for this purpose, may waive our compliance with some of our covenants in that indenture. However, we cannot obtain a waiver of a payment default or of any of the matters covered by the bullet points included above under “— Changes Requiring Your Approval.”

Further Details Concerning Voting

When taking a vote, we will use the following rules to decide how much principal to attribute to the Notes:

The Notes will not be considered outstanding, and therefore not eligible to vote, if we have deposited or set aside in trust money for their payment or redemption. The Notes will also not be eligible to vote if they have been fully defeased as described later under “Defeasance — Full Defeasance.”

We will generally be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders of the Notes that are entitled to vote or take other action under the indenture. However, the record date may not be more than 30 days before the date of the first solicitation of holders to vote on or take such action. If we set a record date for a vote or other action to be taken by holders of the Notes, that vote or action may be taken only by persons who are holders of the Notes on the record date and must be taken within eleven months following the record date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how approval may be granted or denied if we seek to change the indenture or the Notes or request a waiver.

Defeasance

“Defeasance” means that, by depositing with a trustee an amount of cash and/or government securities sufficient to pay all principal and interest, if any, on the Notes when due and satisfying any additional conditions noted below, we will be deemed to have been discharged from our obligations under the Notes. In the event of a “covenant defeasance,” upon depositing such funds and satisfying similar conditions discussed below we would be released from the restrictive covenants under the indenture relating to the Notes.

The following defeasance provisions will be applicable to the Notes:

Covenant Defeasance

Under the indenture, we can make the deposit described below and be released from some of the restrictive covenants in the indenture under which the Notes were issued. This is called “covenant defeasance.” In that event, you would lose the protection of those restrictive covenants but would gain the protection of having money or money and government securities set aside in trust to repay your Notes. If we achieve covenant defeasance and your Notes were subordinated as described under “Indenture Provisions — Ranking” below, such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit described in the first bullet to the payment of amounts due in respect of such debt securities for the benefit of the subordinated debtholders. In order to achieve covenant defeasance, we must do the following:

- Since the Notes are denominated in U.S. dollars, we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of the Notes either cash or a combination of cash and U.S. government or U.S. government agency notes or bonds that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the Notes on their various due dates.
- We must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel confirming that, under current U.S. federal income tax law, we may make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the Notes any differently than if we did not make the deposit.
- We must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion and officers’ certificate stating that all conditions precedent to covenant defeasance have been complied with.
- Defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or result in a default under, the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments.
- No default or event of default with respect to the Notes shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days.

If we accomplish covenant defeasance, you can still look to us for repayment of the Notes if there were a shortfall in the trust deposit or the trustee is prevented from making payment. For example, if one of the remaining Events of Default occurred (such as our bankruptcy) and the Notes became immediately due and payable, there might be a shortfall. Depending on the event causing the default, you may not be able to obtain payment of the shortfall.

Full Defeasance

We can legally release ourselves from all payment and other obligations on the Notes (called “full defeasance”) if we put in place the following other arrangements for you to be repaid:

- Since the Notes are denominated in U.S. dollars, we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of the Notes a combination of money and U.S. government or U.S. government agency notes or bonds that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the Notes on their various due dates.
- We must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion confirming that there has been a change in current U.S. federal tax law or an IRS ruling that allows us to make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the Notes any differently than if we did not make the deposit. Under current U.S. federal tax law the deposit and our legal release from the Notes would be treated as though we paid you your share of the cash and notes or bonds at the time the cash and notes or bonds were deposited in trust in exchange for your Notes and you would recognize gain or loss on the Notes at the time of the deposit.
- We must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion and officers’ certificate stating that all conditions precedent to defeasance have been complied with.
- Defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, of the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments;
- No default or event of default with respect to the Notes shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days.

If we ever did accomplish full defeasance, as described above, you would have to rely solely on the trust deposit for repayment of the Notes. You could not look to us for repayment in the unlikely event of any shortfall. Conversely, the trust deposit would most likely be protected from claims of our lenders and other creditors if we ever became bankrupt or insolvent. If your Notes were subordinated as described later under “— Indenture Provisions — Ranking,” such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the Indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit referred to in the first bullet of the preceding paragraph to the payment of amounts due in respect of such Notes for the benefit of the subordinated debtholders.

Limitation on Restricted Payments Covenant

In addition to any other covenants described in this prospectus, as well as standard covenants relating to payment of principal and interest, maintaining an office where payments may be made or where securities can be surrendered for payment, payment of taxes by us and related matters, upon (i) the failure to pay interest on any Note when such interest is due and payable or (ii) the occurrence of an Event of Default and while any such interest payment remains unpaid or such Event of Default is ongoing the indenture prohibits us from:

- (1) declaring or paying any dividend, making any distribution on or in respect of our capital stock or making any similar payment to the direct or indirect holders of our capital stock in their capacity as such;

- (2) purchasing, repurchasing, redeeming, retiring or otherwise acquiring (“Purchase”) for value any capital stock of the Company held by any Person (other than capital stock held by the Company or a subsidiary) or any capital stock of a subsidiary held by any Affiliate of the Company;
- (3) purchasing for value, prior to scheduled maturity, any scheduled repayment of any subordinated obligations; or
- (4) making any investment in any Person.

Form, Exchange and Transfer of Certificated Registered Securities

If registered Notes cease to be issued in book-entry form, they will be issued:

- only in fully registered certificated form;
- without interest coupons; and
- unless we indicate otherwise, in denominations of \$25 and amounts that are multiples of \$25.

Holders may exchange their certificated securities for Notes of smaller denominations or combined into fewer Notes of larger denominations, as long as the total principal amount is not changed and as long as the denomination is equal to or greater than \$25.

Holders may exchange or transfer their certificated securities at the corporate trust office of the trustee. We have appointed the trustee to act as our agent for registering Notes in the names of holders transferring Notes. We may appoint another entity to perform these functions or perform them ourselves.

Holders will not be required to pay a service charge to transfer or exchange their certificated securities, but they may be required to pay any tax or other governmental charge associated with the transfer or exchange. The transfer or exchange will be made only if our transfer agent is satisfied with the holder’s proof of legal ownership.

We may appoint additional transfer agents or cancel the appointment of any particular transfer agent. We may also approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts.

If any certificated securities of a particular series are redeemable and we redeem less than all the debt securities of that series, we may block the transfer or exchange of those debt securities during the period beginning 15 days before the day we mail the notice of redemption and ending on the day of that mailing, in order to freeze the list of holders to prepare the mailing. We may also refuse to register transfers or exchanges of any certificated securities selected for redemption, except that we will continue to permit transfers and exchanges of the unredeemed portion of any debt security that will be partially redeemed.

If a registered debt security is issued in book-entry form, only the depository will be entitled to transfer and exchange the debt security as described in this subsection, since it will be the sole holder of the debt security.

Resignation of Trustee

The trustee may resign or be removed with respect to the Notes provided that a successor trustee is appointed to act with respect to the Notes. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of indenture securities under the indenture, each of the trustees will be a trustee of a trust separate and apart from the trust administered by any other trustee.

Indenture Provisions — Ranking

The Notes will be our direct unsecured obligations and will rank:

- *Pari passu* with, which means equal to, all of our currently outstanding unsecured unsubordinated indebtedness issued by us. The Notes will also rank *pari passu* with our general liabilities, which consist of trade and other payables, including any outstanding dividend payable, interest and debt fees payable, vendor payables and accrued expenses such as auditor fees, legal fees, director fees, etc. In total, these general liabilities were \$59.2 million as of March 31, 2020. We have the ability to issue from time to time other debt securities with terms different from the Notes and, without consent of the holders thereof, as well as the ability to reopen the Notes and issue additional Notes. If we issue additional debt securities, these additional debt securities could rank higher in priority of payment or have a lien or other security interest greater than that accorded to the holders of the Notes.

- Senior to any of our future indebtedness that expressly provides it is subordinated to the Notes. We currently do not have outstanding debt that is subordinated to the Notes and do not currently intend to issue indebtedness that expressly provides that it is subordinated to the Notes. Therefore, the Notes, as currently contemplated, will not be senior to any indebtedness or obligations.
- Effectively subordinated to all of our existing and future secured indebtedness (including indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant a security interest), to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. Because the Notes will not be secured by any of our assets, they will be effectively subordinated to any existing secured indebtedness, any indebtedness that we may incur in the future, such as a new credit facility to replace the commercial line facility we have with Patriot Bank N.A. (which we intend to repay from the net proceeds of this offering), or any indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant a security interest, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. In any liquidation, dissolution, bankruptcy or other similar proceeding, the holders of any of our existing or future secured indebtedness may assert rights against the assets pledged to secure that indebtedness in order to receive full payment of their indebtedness before the assets may be used to pay other creditors, including the holders of the Notes, and any assets of our subsidiaries will not be directly available to satisfy the claims of our creditors, including holders of the Notes.
- Structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other obligations of any of our subsidiaries and financing vehicles since the Notes are obligations exclusively of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. and not of any of our subsidiaries. Structural subordination means that creditors of a parent entity are subordinate to creditors of a subsidiary entity with respect to the subsidiary's assets.

Book-Entry Procedures

The Notes will be represented by global securities that will be deposited and registered in the name of DTC or its nominee. This means that, except in limited circumstances, you will not receive certificates for the Notes.

Beneficial interests in the Notes will be represented through book-entry accounts of financial institutions acting on behalf of beneficial owners as direct and indirect participants in DTC. Investors may elect to hold interests in the Notes through either DTC, if they are a participant, or indirectly through organizations that are participants in DTC.

The Notes will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered certificate will be issued for each issuance of the Notes, in the aggregate principal amount of such issue, and will be deposited with DTC. Interests in the Notes will trade in DTC's Same Day Funds Settlement System, and any permitted secondary market trading activity in such Notes will, therefore, be required by DTC to be settled in immediately available funds. We will not have and neither the Trustee nor the Paying Agent will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC or its participants or indirect participants of their respective obligations under the rules and procedures governing their operations.

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Exchange Act. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 1.3 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments from over 131 countries and territories that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC").

DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly (“Indirect Participants”). The DTC Rules applicable to its participants are on file with the SEC. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com and www.dtc.org.

Purchases of the Notes under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Notes on DTC’s records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each security, or the “Beneficial Owner,” is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants’ records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Notes are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the Notes, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Notes is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Notes deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC’s partnership nominee, Cede & Co. or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of the Notes with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not affect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Notes; DTC’s records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts the Notes are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Notes within an issue are being redeemed, DTC’s practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such issue to be redeemed.

Redemption proceeds, distributions, and interest payments on the Notes will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC’s practice is to credit Direct Participants’ accounts upon DTC’s receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from us or the Trustee on the payment date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC’s records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in “street name,” and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC nor its nominee, the Trustee, or us, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of redemption proceeds, distributions, and interest payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of us or the Trustee, but disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as securities depository with respect to the Notes at any time by giving reasonable notice to us or to the Trustee. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor securities depository is not obtained, certificates are required to be printed and delivered. We may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, certificates will be printed and delivered to DTC.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC’s book-entry system has been obtained from sources that we believe to be reliable, but we take no responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

CERTAIN U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following discussion is a general summary of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations (and, in the case of a non-U.S. holder (as defined below), certain U.S. federal estate tax consequences) applicable to an investment in the Notes. This summary does not purport to be a complete description of the income and estate tax considerations applicable to such an investment. The discussion is based upon the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), Treasury Regulations, and administrative and judicial interpretations, each as of the date of this prospectus and all of which are subject to change, potentially with retroactive effect. You should consult your own tax advisor with respect to tax considerations that pertain to your purchase, ownership and disposition of the Notes.

This discussion deals only with Notes held as capital assets within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code (generally, property held for investment) and does not purport to deal with persons in special tax situations, such as financial institutions, insurance companies, controlled foreign corporations, passive foreign investment companies and regulated investment companies (and shareholders of such corporations), dealers in securities or currencies, traders in securities, former citizens of the United States, persons holding the Notes as a hedge against currency risks or as a position in a "straddle," "hedge," "constructive sale transaction" or "conversion transaction" for tax purposes, entities that are tax-exempt for U.S. federal income tax purposes, retirement plans, individual retirement accounts, tax-deferred accounts, persons subject to the alternative minimum tax, pass-through entities (including partnerships and entities and arrangements classified as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes) and beneficial owners of pass-through entities, or persons whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar. It does not deal with beneficial owners of the Notes other than original purchasers of the Notes who acquire the Notes in this offering for a price equal to their original issue price (i.e., the first price at which a substantial amount of the notes is sold other than to bond houses, brokers, or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers). It also does not address the U.S. federal income tax consequences to beneficial owners of the Notes subject to the special tax accounting rules under Section 451(b) of the Code. In addition, this summary only addresses U.S. federal income tax consequences (and, in the case of a non-U.S. holder certain U.S. federal estate tax consequences), and, except as otherwise noted below, does not address any U.S. state or local or non-U.S. tax consequences. If you are considering purchasing the Notes, you should consult your own tax advisor concerning the application of the U.S. federal tax laws to you in light of your particular situation, as well as any consequences to you of purchasing, owning and disposing of the Notes under the laws of any other taxing jurisdiction.

For purposes of this discussion, the term "U.S. holder" means a beneficial owner of a Note that is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) an individual citizen or resident of the United States, (ii) a corporation (or other entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes), created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, (iii) a trust (a) subject to the control of one or more U.S. persons and the primary supervision of a court in the United States, or (b) that existed on August 20, 1996 and has made a valid election (under applicable Treasury Regulations) to be treated as a domestic trust, or (iv) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source. The term "non-U.S. holder" means a beneficial owner of a Note that is neither a U.S. holder nor a partnership (including an entity or arrangement treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes). An individual may, subject to exceptions, be deemed to be a resident alien, as opposed to a non-resident alien, by, among other ways, being present in the United States (i) on at least 31 days in the calendar year, and (ii) for an aggregate of at least 183 days during a three-year period ending in the current calendar year, counting for such purposes all of the days present in the current year, one-third of the days present in the immediately preceding year, and one-sixth of the days present in the second preceding year. Resident aliens are subject to U.S. federal income tax as if they were U.S. citizens.

If a partnership (including an entity or arrangement treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) holds any Notes, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner of the partnership generally will depend upon the status of the partner, the activities of the partnership and certain determinations made at the partner level. Partners of partnerships holding Notes should consult their own tax advisors.

Taxation of Note Holders

Under present law, the Notes will constitute our indebtedness for U.S. federal income tax purposes and this discussion assumes that to be the case. Accordingly, we intend to treat all payments made with respect to the Notes consistent with this characterization.

Taxation of U.S. Holders. Payments or accruals of interest on a Note generally will be taxable to a U.S. holder as ordinary interest income at the time they are received (actually or constructively) or accrued, in accordance with the U.S. holder's regular method of tax accounting.

Upon the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of a Note, a U.S. holder generally will recognize capital gain or loss equal to the difference between the amount realized on the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition (excluding amounts representing accrued and unpaid interest, which are treated as ordinary income to the extent not previously included in income) and the U.S. holder's adjusted tax basis in the Note. A U.S. holder's adjusted tax basis in a Note generally will equal the U.S. holder's initial investment in the Note. Capital gain or loss generally will be long-term capital gain or loss if the Note was held for more than one year. Long-term capital gains recognized by certain non-corporate U.S. holders (including individuals) generally are eligible for reduced rates of taxation. The distinction between capital gain or loss and ordinary income or loss is also important in other contexts, for example, for purposes of the limitations on a U.S. holder's ability to offset capital losses against ordinary income.

Unearned Income Medicare Contribution. A tax of 3.8% will be imposed on certain "net investment income" (or "undistributed net investment income," in the case of estates and trusts) received by taxpayers other than corporations with adjusted gross income above certain threshold amounts. "Net investment income" as defined for U.S. federal Medicare contribution purposes generally includes interest payments and gain recognized from the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of the Notes. Tax-exempt trusts, which are not subject to income taxes generally, and foreign individuals will not be subject to this tax. U.S. holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the effect, if any, of this tax on their ownership and disposition of the Notes.

Taxation of Non-U.S. Holders. A non-U.S. holder generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding taxes on payments of principal or interest on a Note provided that (i) income on the Note is not effectively connected with the conduct by the non-U.S. holder of a trade or business within the United States, (ii) the non-U.S. holder is not a controlled foreign corporation related to the Company through stock ownership, (iii) the non-U.S. holder is not a bank receiving interest described in Section 881(c)(3)(A) of the Code, (iv) the non-U.S. holder does not own (directly or indirectly, actually or constructively) 10% or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of our capital stock of the Company, and (v) the non-U.S. holder has provided a statement prior to the payment of interest in the year in which a payment occurs or in the preceding three years, on an Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") Form W-8BEN, Form W-8BEN-E, or other applicable form signed under penalties of perjury that includes its name and address and certifies that the non-U.S. holder is the beneficial owner and is not a U.S. person in compliance with applicable requirements, or satisfies documentary evidence requirements for establishing that it is a non-U.S. holder. These forms may be required to be periodically updated.

A non-U.S. holder that is not exempt from tax under these rules generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax withholding on payments of interest on the Notes at a rate of 30% unless (i) the income is effectively connected with the conduct of a U.S. trade or business (and, under certain income tax treaties, is attributable to a permanent establishment maintained in the United States by the non-U.S. holder), so long as the non-U.S. holder has provided, prior to payment of such interest, an IRS Form W-8ECI or substantially similar substitute form stating that the interest on the Notes is effectively connected with the non-U.S. holder's conduct of a trade or business in the U.S. in which case the interest will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis as applicable to U.S. holders generally (unless an applicable income tax treaty provides otherwise), or (ii) an applicable income tax treaty provides for a lower rate of, or exemption from, withholding tax.

In the case of a non-U.S. holder that is a corporation and that receives income that is effectively connected with the conduct of a U.S. trade or business, such income may also be subject to a branch profits tax (which is generally imposed on a non-U.S. corporation on the actual or deemed repatriation from the United States of earnings and profits attributable to a U.S. trade or business) at a 30% rate. The branch profits tax may not apply (or may apply at a reduced rate) if the non-U.S. holder is a qualified resident of a country with which the United States has an income tax treaty.

To claim the benefit of an income tax treaty or to claim exemption from withholding because income is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business, the non-U.S. holder must timely provide the appropriate properly executed IRS forms. The non-U.S. holder must inform the recipient of any changes on these forms within 30 days of such change. These forms may be required to be periodically updated. Also, a non-U.S. holder who is claiming the benefits of a treaty may be required to obtain a United States taxpayer identification number and to provide certain documentary evidence issued by foreign governmental authorities to prove residence in the foreign country.

Generally, a non-U.S. holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding taxes on any amount that constitutes capital gain upon the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of a Note, provided that (i) the gain is not effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business in the United States by the non-U.S. holder (or, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, is not attributable to a permanent establishment maintained in the United States by the non-U.S. holder) and (ii) the non-U.S. holder is not an individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition and meets certain other conditions (unless such holder is eligible for relief under an applicable income tax treaty). Certain other exceptions may be applicable, and a non-U.S. holder should consult its tax advisor in this regard.

A Note that is held by an individual who, at the time of death, is not a citizen or resident of the United States (as specially defined for U.S. federal estate tax purposes) generally will not be subject to the U.S. federal estate tax, unless, at the time of death, (i) such individual directly or indirectly, actually or constructively, owns ten percent (10%) or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of our stock entitled to vote within the meaning of Section 871(h)(3) of the Code or (ii) such individual's interest in the Notes is effectively connected with the individual's conduct of a U.S. trade or business.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding. A U.S. holder (other than an "exempt recipient," including a corporation and certain other persons who, when required, demonstrate their exempt status) may be subject to backup withholding on, and to information reporting requirements with respect to, payments of principal and interest on, and proceeds from the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of the Notes. In general, if a non-corporate U.S. holder subject to information reporting fails to furnish a correct taxpayer identification number or otherwise fails to comply with applicable backup withholding requirements, backup withholding at the applicable rate may apply.

The amount of interest we pay to a non-U.S. holder on the Notes will be reported to such non-U.S. holder and to the IRS annually on an IRS Form 1042-S even if the non-U.S. holder is exempt from the 30% withholding tax described above. Copies of the information returns reporting those payments and the amounts withheld, if any, may also be made available to the tax authorities in the country where the non-U.S. holder is resident under provisions of an applicable income tax treaty or agreement.

In addition, backup withholding tax and certain other information reporting requirements apply to payments of principal and interest on, and proceeds from the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of the Notes, unless an exemption applies. Backup withholding and information reporting will not apply to payments we make to a non-U.S. holder if such non-U.S. holder has provided to the applicable withholding agent under penalties of perjury the required certification of their non-U.S. person status as discussed above (and the applicable withholding agent does not have actual knowledge or reason to know that they are a U.S. person) or if the non-U.S. holder is an exempt recipient.

If a non-U.S. holder sells or redeems a Note through a U.S. broker or the U.S. office of a foreign broker, the proceeds from such sale or redemption will be subject to information reporting and backup withholding unless such non-U.S. holder provides a withholding certificate or other appropriate documentary evidence establishing that such non-U.S. holder is not a U.S. person to the broker and such broker does not have actual knowledge or reason to know that such non-U.S. holder is a U.S. person, or the non-U.S. holder is an exempt recipient eligible for an exemption from information reporting and backup withholding. If a non-U.S. holder sells or redeems a note through the foreign office of a broker who is a U.S. person or has certain enumerated connections with the United States, the proceeds from such sale or redemption will be subject to information reporting unless the non-U.S. holder provides to such broker a withholding certificate or other appropriate documentary evidence establishing that the non-U.S. holder is not a U.S. person and such broker does not have actual knowledge or reason to know that such evidence is false, or the non-U.S. holder is an exempt recipient eligible for an exemption from information reporting. In circumstances where information reporting by the foreign office of such a broker is required, backup withholding will be required only if the broker has actual knowledge that the non-U.S. holder is a U.S. person.

You should consult your tax advisor regarding the qualification for an exemption from backup withholding and information reporting and the procedures for obtaining such an exemption, if applicable. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules from a payment to a beneficial owner generally would be allowed as a refund or a credit against such beneficial owner's U.S. federal income tax provided the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act

Legislation commonly referred to as the "Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act," or "FATCA," generally imposes a 30% withholding tax on payments of certain types of income to foreign financial institutions ("FFIs") unless such FFIs either (i) enter into an agreement with the U.S. Treasury to report certain required information with respect to accounts held by U.S. persons (or held by foreign entities that have U.S. persons as substantial owners) or (ii) reside in a jurisdiction that has entered into an intergovernmental agreement ("IGA") with the United States to collect and share such information and are in compliance with the terms of such IGA and any enabling legislation or regulations. Under proposed regulations promulgated by the Treasury Department on December 13, 2018, which state that taxpayers may rely on the proposed regulations until final regulations are issued, this withholding tax will not apply to the gross proceeds from any sale or disposition of the Notes. The information required to be reported includes the identity and taxpayer identification number of each account holder that is a U.S. person and transaction activity within the holder's account. In addition, subject to certain exceptions, this legislation also imposes a 30% withholding on payments to foreign entities that are not FFIs unless the foreign entity certifies that it does not have a greater than 10% U.S. owner or provides the withholding agent with identifying information on each greater than 10% U.S. owner. Depending on the status of a non-U.S. holder and the status of the intermediaries through which they hold the Notes, non-U.S. holders could be subject to this 30% withholding tax with respect to interest paid on the Notes and proceeds from the sale of the Notes. Under certain circumstances, a non-U.S. holder might be eligible for refunds or credits of such taxes.

You should consult your own tax advisor with respect to the particular tax consequences to you of an investment in the Notes, including the possible effect of any pending legislation or proposed regulations.

UNDERWRITING

Ladenburg Thalmann is acting as representative of the underwriters named below. Subject to the terms and conditions stated in the underwriting agreement dated [*] 2020, each underwriter named below has agreed to purchase, and we have agreed to sell to that underwriter, the aggregate principal amount of Notes set forth opposite the underwriter's name.

Underwriter	Principal Amount of Notes
Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.	

The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the Notes included in this offering are subject to approval of legal matters by counsel and to other conditions. The underwriters are obligated to purchase all the Notes (other than those covered by the overallotment option described below) if they purchase any of the Notes.

The underwriters propose to offer some of the Notes directly to the public at the public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and some of the Notes to dealers at the public offering price less a concession not to exceed \$[*], or [*]% of the aggregate principal amount of the Notes. The underwriting discount of \$[*] per Note is equal to [*]% of the aggregate principal amount of the Notes. If all of the Notes are not sold at the offering price, the representative may change the public offering price and other selling terms. Investors must pay for any Notes purchased on or before [*], 2020. The representative has advised us that the underwriters do not intend to confirm any sales to any accounts over which they exercise discretionary authority.

The underwriters hold an option, exercisable for 30 days from the date of this prospectus, to purchase up to an additional \$3.75 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes at the public offering price less the underwriting discount. The underwriters may exercise the option solely for the purpose of covering overallotments, if any, in connection with this offering. To the extent such option is exercised, each underwriter must purchase a number of additional Notes approximately proportionate to that underwriter's initial purchase commitment.

We have agreed that, for a period of 60 days from the date of this prospectus, we will not, without the prior written consent of Ladenburg, on behalf of the underwriters, offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell or otherwise dispose of or agree to sell or otherwise dispose of, directly or indirectly or hedge any debt securities issued or guaranteed by us or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for debt securities issued or guaranteed by us or file any registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to any of the foregoing. Ladenburg in its sole discretion may release any of the securities subject to these lock-up agreements at any time without notice. For purposes of clarity, nothing shall prevent the company from incurring bank indebtedness or trade liabilities in the ordinary course. In addition, our Series A preferred stock or future series of substantively similar preferred stock would not be deemed debt securities for purposes of this restriction.

The 60-day period in the preceding paragraph will be extended if (i) during the last 17 days of the 60-day period we issue an earnings release or material news or a material event relating to us occurs or (ii) prior to the expiration of the 60-day period, we announce that we will release earnings results during the 16-day period beginning on the last day of the 60-day period, in which case the restrictions described in the preceding sentence will continue to apply until the expiration of the 18-day period beginning on the issuance of the earnings release or the announcement of the material news or the occurrence of the material event.

There is presently no public market for the Notes. We intend to list the Notes on the Nasdaq Global Market under the trading symbol "[*]" and we expect trading to commence within 30 days of the original issue date, however we cannot guarantee that the Notes will be approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market or any market. The Notes are expected to trade "flat." This means that purchasers will not pay, and sellers will not receive, any accrued and unpaid interest on the Notes that is not included in the trading price.

The following table shows the public offering price, the underwriting discounts and commissions to be paid to the underwriters and the proceeds, before expenses, to us in connection with this offering. These amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional Notes.

	Per Note	Without Option	With Option
Public offering price	\$ 25.00	\$ 25,000,000	\$ 28,750,000
Underwriting discount (sales load) paid by us ⁽¹⁾	\$ 1.25	\$ 1,250,000	\$ 1,437,500
Estimated Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$ 23.75	\$ 23,750,000	\$ 27,312,500

(1) The expenses associated with the offering, including the underwriting discount, are paid by us and are ultimately borne by our shareholders.

We have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for all reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them for travel, fees and disbursements of counsel and other consultants in connection with this offering and FINRA filings, up to a maximum of \$100,000.

We estimate expenses payable by us in connection with this offering, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions referred to above, will be approximately \$350,000.

We and our investment adviser have each agreed to indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, or to contribute to payments the underwriters may be required to make because of any of those liabilities.

Certain underwriters may make a market in the Notes. No underwriter is, however, obligated to conduct market-making activities and any such activities may be discontinued at any time without notice, at the sole discretion of the underwriter. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of, or the trading market for, the Notes as a result of any market-making activities undertaken by any underwriter. This prospectus is to be used by any underwriter in connection with the offering and, during the period in which a prospectus must be delivered, with offers and sales of the Notes in market-making transactions in the over-the-counter market at negotiated prices related to prevailing market prices at the time of the sale.

In connection with the offering, Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc., on behalf of the underwriters, may purchase and sell Notes in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, syndicate covering transactions and stabilizing transactions. Short sales involve syndicate sales of Notes in excess of the number of Notes to be purchased by the underwriters in the offering, which creates a syndicate short position. "Covered" short sales are sales of Notes made in an amount up to the number of Notes represented by the underwriters' overallotment option. In determining the source of Notes to close out the covered syndicate short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of Notes available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase Notes through the overallotment option. Transactions to close out the covered syndicate short position involve either purchases of Notes in the open market after the distribution has been completed or the exercise of the overallotment option. The underwriters may also make "naked" short sales of Notes in excess of the overallotment option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing Notes in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of Notes in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of bids for or purchases of Notes in the open market while the offering is in progress.

The underwriters also may impose a penalty bid. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a syndicate member when Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc. repurchases Notes originally sold by that syndicate member in order to cover syndicate short positions or make stabilizing purchases.

Any of these activities may have the effect of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of Notes. They may also cause the price of Notes to be higher than the price that would otherwise exist in the open market in the absence of these transactions. The underwriters may conduct these transactions on the Nasdaq Global Market, if the Notes are approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market, or in the over-the-counter market, or otherwise. Trading is expected to commence on the Nasdaq Global Market within 30 days after the date of initial delivery of the Notes. If the underwriters commence any of these transactions, they may discontinue them at any time.

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available on the websites maintained by one or more of the underwriters. The representative may agree to allocate a number of Notes to underwriters for sale to their online brokerage account holders. The representative will allocate Notes to underwriters that may make Internet distributions on the same basis as other allocations. In addition, Notes may be sold by the underwriters to securities dealers who resell Notes to online brokerage account holders.

Certain underwriters may, from time to time, engage in transactions with or perform services for us, our investment adviser and our affiliates in the ordinary course of business.

The principal business address of Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc. is 277 Park Avenue, 26th floor, New York, New York 10172.

Settlement

We expect that delivery of the Notes will be made against payment therefor on or about _____, 2020, which will be the fifth business day following the date of the pricing of the Notes. Under Rule 15c6-1 under the Exchange Act, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in two business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise.

Other Jurisdictions

The Notes offered by this prospectus may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, nor may this prospectus or any other offering material or advertisements in connection with the offer and sale of any such Notes be distributed or published in any jurisdiction, except under circumstances that will result in compliance with the applicable rules and regulations of that jurisdiction. Persons into whose possession this prospectus comes are advised to inform themselves about and to observe any restriction relating to the offering and the distribution of this prospectus. This prospectus does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy the Notes offered by this prospectus in any jurisdiction in which such an offer or a solicitation is unlawful.

Potential Conflicts of Interest

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the underwriters and their respective affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various financial advisory and investment banking services for us, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses, including acting as underwriters for our securities offerings. In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of our company. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Ladenburg Thalmann acted as the sole book-running manager of the underwritten offering of an aggregate offering amount of \$16,162,425 of our Series A Preferred Stock (including the partial exercise by the underwriters of their overallotment option), which was completed on June 29, 2018. Ladenburg Thalmann received an aggregate of \$1 million in connection with such offering, consisting of underwriting discounts and commissions and reimbursement of legal costs and expenses. In addition, Ladenburg Thalmann acted as a financial advisor to the Company in connection with the creation of Crackle Plus and was paid an aggregate transaction fee of \$1,830,954.

LEGAL MATTERS

The legality of the Notes will be passed on for us by our counsel, Graubard Miller, New York, New York. Graubard Miller and certain of its partners and family members own shares of the Class A Common Stock and Class W Warrants to purchase shares of Class A Common Stock of CSSE and certain Class B membership interests in Chicken Soup for the Soul Holdings, LLC, our ultimate parent company. Certain legal matters in connection with this offering will be passed upon for the underwriters by Blank Rome LLP, New York, New York. Graubard Miller has provided legal services to Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc. from time to time.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc. and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2019 and 2018, and for the years ended December 31, 2019 and 2018, are incorporated by reference herein to the [Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019](#), in reliance upon the report of Rosenfield and Company, PLLC, independent registered public accounting firm, which is also incorporated by reference herein, and upon the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The audited historical financial statements of Crackle U.S. (a business of Sony Pictures Entertainment) included in Exhibit 99.1 to the Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K/A dated July 30, 2019 have been so incorporated in reliance on the report of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, independent accountants, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION; INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference the information we file with it, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus, and information that we file later with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. This prospectus incorporates by reference the documents listed below, all filings we make under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the initial filing date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part and prior to effectiveness of such registration statement, and all filings we make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after effectiveness of such registration statement and prior to the sale of all of the shares offered hereby, including all documents filed as exhibits to any of the foregoing:

- [our annual report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019 filed with the SEC on March 30, 2020](#);
- [our quarterly report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2020, filed with the SEC on May 14, 2020](#);
- our current reports on Form 8-K or 8-K/A, as applicable, filed with the SEC on each of [May 15, 2019](#), [July 30, 2019](#), [February 14, 2020](#), [March 20, 2020](#), [April 1, 2020](#), [April 17, 2020](#), [May 15, 2020](#), [June 9, 2020](#), and [June 12, 2020](#);
- [our proxy statement on Schedule 14A filed with the SEC on April 29, 2020](#); and
- [our registration statement on Form 8-A effective on June 21, 2017, registering our Class A common stock under Section 12\(b\) of the Exchange Act](#).

Any statement contained in a document filed before the date of this prospectus and incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus. Any information that we file after the date of this prospectus with the SEC will automatically update and supersede the information contained in this prospectus. Notwithstanding the foregoing, we are not incorporating any document or portion thereof or information deemed to have been furnished and not filed in accordance with SEC rule.

In addition to accessing the above information through the SEC's website at www.sec.gov, you may obtain a copy of any or all of the information that has been incorporated by reference in this prospectus, without charge, upon written or oral request directed to Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. 132 E. Putnam Ave., Floor 2W, Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807, telephone number (855) 398-0443.

PROSPECTUS

Lead Bookrunner
Ladenburg Thalmann

[*] 2020

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

The estimated expenses in connection with the sale of the securities being registered hereby, are as follows:

SEC registration fee	\$ 3,732
FINRA filing fee	15,000
Nasdaq listing fees and expenses	25,000
Accounting fees and expenses	50,000
Legal fees and expenses	185,000
Printing expenses	25,000
Road show expenses	25,000
Transfer agent fees and expenses	20,000
Miscellaneous (1)	1,268
Total	<u>\$ 350,000</u>

(1) This amount represents additional expenses that may be incurred by the Company in connection with the offering, including distribution and mailing costs.

Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

The certificate of incorporation and by-laws of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc. ("CSSE") provide that all directors and officers shall be entitled to be indemnified by such company to the fullest extent permitted by law. The certificate of incorporation provides that CSSE may indemnify to the fullest extent permitted by law all employees. CSSE's by-laws provide that, if authorized by the Board of Directors, it may indemnify any other person whom it has the power to indemnify under section 145 of the Delaware General Company Law. Section 145 of the Delaware General Company Law concerning indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents is set forth below.

"Section 145. Indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents; insurance.

(a) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person's conduct was unlawful. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, shall not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not act in good faith and in a manner which the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that the person's conduct was unlawful.

(b) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and except that no indemnification shall be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery or the court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper.

(c) To the extent that a present or former director or officer of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, such person shall be indemnified against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection therewith.

(d) Any indemnification under subsections (a) and (b) of this section (unless ordered by a court) shall be made by the corporation only as authorized in the specific case upon a determination that indemnification of the present or former director, officer, employee or agent is proper in the circumstances because the person has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in subsections (a) and (b) of this section. Such determination shall be made, with respect to a person who is a director or officer of the corporation at the time of such determination, (1) by a majority vote of the directors who are not parties to such action, suit or proceeding, even though less than a quorum, or (2) by a committee of such directors designated by majority vote of such directors, even though less than a quorum, or (3) if there are no such directors, or if such directors so direct, by independent legal counsel in a written opinion, or (4) by the stockholders.

(e) Expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an officer or director of the corporation in defending any civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding may be paid by the corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that such person is not entitled to be indemnified by the corporation as authorized in this section. Such expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by former directors and officers or other employees and agents of the corporation or by persons serving at the request of the corporation as directors, officers, employees or agents of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise may be so paid upon such terms and conditions, if any, as the corporation deems appropriate.

(f) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, the other subsections of this section shall not be deemed exclusive of any other rights to which those seeking indemnification or advancement of expenses may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in such person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while holding such office. A right to indemnification or to advancement of expenses arising under a provision of the certificate of incorporation or a bylaw shall not be eliminated or impaired by an amendment to such provision after the occurrence of the act or omission that is the subject of the civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which indemnification or advancement of expenses is sought, unless the provision in effect at the time of such act or omission explicitly authorizes such elimination or impairment after such action or omission has occurred.

(g) A corporation shall have power to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under this section.

(h) For purposes of this section, references to "the corporation" shall include, in addition to the resulting corporation, any constituent corporation (including any constituent of a constituent) absorbed in a consolidation or merger which, if its separate existence had continued, would have had power and authority to indemnify its directors, officers, and employees or agents, so that any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of such constituent corporation, or is or was serving at the request of such constituent corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, shall stand in the same position under this section with respect to the resulting or surviving corporation as such person would have with respect to such constituent corporation if its separate existence had continued.

(i) For purposes of this section, references to “other enterprises” shall include employee benefit plans; references to “fines” shall include any excise taxes assessed on a person with respect to any employee benefit plan; and references to “serving at the request of the corporation” shall include any service as a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation which imposes duties on, or involves services by, such director, officer, employee or agent with respect to an employee benefit plan, its participants or beneficiaries; and a person who acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in the interest of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan shall be deemed to have acted in a manner “not opposed to the best interests of the corporation” as referred to in this section.

(j) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, this section shall, unless otherwise provided when authorized or ratified, continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of the heirs, executors and administrators of such a person.

(k) The Court of Chancery is hereby vested with exclusive jurisdiction to hear and determine all actions for advancement of expenses or indemnification brought under this section or under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise. The Court of Chancery may summarily determine a corporation’s obligation to advance expenses (including attorneys’ fees).”

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers, and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person in a successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to the court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

Paragraph B of Article Eight of CSSE’s certificate of incorporation provides:

“The Company, to the full extent permitted by Section 145 of the GCL, as amended from time to time, shall indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant thereto. Expenses (including attorneys’ fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which such officer or director may be entitled to indemnification hereunder shall be paid by the Company in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that he is not entitled to be indemnified by the Company as authorized hereby.”

Item 15. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

Set forth below is information regarding shares of capital stock issued by us during the last three years. Also included is the consideration received by us for such shares and information relating to the section of the Securities Act, or rule of the Securities and Exchange Commission, under which exemption from registration was claimed.

Share Issuance and Warrants

On July 23, 2019 we issued 40,000 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock to a single investor in a private placement for \$25.00 pursuant to the exemption from registration under Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Rule 506 promulgated thereunder. The investor received customary registration rights.

On June 25, 2019, we issued 40,000 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock to a single investor in a private placement for \$25.00 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1 million. We were required to reimburse the investor's expenses in connection with the sale, including expenses related to due diligence and legal, equal to 8% of the gross proceeds. The investor received customary registration rights. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder.

In May 2019, in connection with the consummation of our joint venture, Crackle Plus, we issued to CPEH warrants to purchase (a) 800,000 shares of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$8.13 per share; (b) 1,200,000 shares of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$9.67 per share; (c) 380,000 shares of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.61 per share; and (d) 1,620,000 shares of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.61 per share. All of such warrants have a five-year term commencing on the closing and are exercisable during such term. CPEH has registration rights with respect to the shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the warrants. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder.

Additionally, we issued to Crackle (now CPEH) 37,000 units of preferred equity of Crackle Plus and 1,000 units of common equity of Crackle Plus. From May 2020 to October 2020 ("Exercise Period"), CPEH will have the right to either convert its preferred equity into common equity of Crackle Plus or require us to purchase all, but not less than all, of its interest in Crackle Plus ("Put Option"). We may elect to pay for such interest in cash or through the issuance of Series A Preferred Stock using a price per share of \$25. CPEH has registration rights with respect to any shares of Series A Preferred Stock it may be issued in connection with the Put Option. Subject to certain limitations, in the event that CPEH has not converted its preferred equity into common equity of Crackle Plus or exercised its Put Option, CPEH shall be deemed to have automatically exercised the Put Option on the last day of the Exercise Period.

In December 2018 we completed our acquisition of all of the capital stock of A Sharp Inc. (dba "A Plus") for an aggregate purchase price of \$15,000,000, paid as follows: (i) a reduction by approximately \$3.3 million of advances owed by A Plus to the Company, (ii) the issuance of 350,299 Class A Common Stock at a share price of \$8.35 totaling a value of approximately \$2,925,000 to the individual sellers and (iii) the remaining in cash to CSS in consideration of all of its shares of A Plus as an offset to amounts due pursuant to the intercompany cash management system.

In August 2018, we completed our acquisition of all the capital stock of Pivotshare for approximately \$258,000 in cash, the issuance of 134,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock and the issuance of 74,235 shares of Class A Common Stock.

In November 2017, we completed our acquisition of all the membership interests of Screen Media for approximately \$4.9 million in cash and the issuance of 35,000 shares of our Class A Common Stock and our Class Z Warrants exercisable into 50,000 shares of our Class A Common Stock at \$12 per share.

Between June 2016 and June 2017, the Company sold a total of an aggregate of approximately \$2.5 million of Class A Common Stock and warrants in private placements. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder, as fewer than 35 investors were non-accredited investors.

Beginning in June 2016 and through November 2016, the Company sold in a separate private placement to accredited investors \$1.0 million of units, consisting of an aggregate of 170,960 shares of Class A Common Stock and Class W Warrants to purchase an aggregate of 51,288 shares of Class A Common Stock. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder.

Beginning in December 2016 and through March 2017, the Company sold in a separate private placement to accredited investors approximately \$1.0 million of units, consisting of an aggregate of 150,112 shares of Class A Common Stock and Class W Warrants to purchase an aggregate of 45,034 shares of Class A Common Stock. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder.

During May and June 2017, the Company sold in two separate equity private placements, a total of an aggregate of 55,000 shares of Class A Common Stock and Class Z Warrants to purchase an aggregate of 50,000 shares of Class A Common Stock. Such securities were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Regulation D promulgated thereunder.

In June 2017, at the election of certain holders of the Company's notes payable ("Term Notes"), the Company converted approximately \$0.9 million of Term Notes into 102,060 shares of Class A Common Stock at a conversion price per share of \$9 and issued Class Z Warrants to purchase an aggregate of 30,618 shares of Class A Common Stock at \$12 per share, to those noteholders that elected to convert. The securities issued upon conversion of the Term Notes were issued pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, as the Term Notes were exchanged for securities exclusively, and no commission or other remuneration was paid or given directly or indirectly for soliciting such exchange.

Grants of Stock Options and Restricted Stock

In February 2020 the Company issued an aggregate of 7,805 shares of its Class A Common stock to five directors pursuant to the Company's non-employee director compensation policy.

In August 2019 the Company issued an aggregate of 6,959 shares of its Class A Common Stock to four directors pursuant to the Company's non-employee director compensation policy.

In May 2019, in connection with the creation of Crackle Plus and the employment by the Company of certain key employees of Crackle, Inc., the Company granted five-year options to purchase up to 15,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an employee and five year options to purchase up to 25,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to two employees. All of the options vest in twelve equal quarterly installments.

In March 2019 the Company granted five-year options to purchase up to 75,000 and 100,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to a non-management employee and an officer, respectively, that vest in twelve equal quarterly installments.

In February 2019 the Company granted five-year options to purchase up to 10,000 and 20,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to two non-management employees that vest in twelve equal quarterly installments.

In January 2019 the Company granted five-year options to purchase up to 20,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an officer and five year options to purchase up to 100,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to two officers. All the options vest in twelve equal quarterly installments.

In August 2018, in connection with the Company's acquisition of Pivotshare and the employment by the Company of certain key employees of Pivotshare, the Company granted five-year options to purchase 7,500 and 15,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to two employees that vest in three equal annual installments.

In January 2018 the Company granted a five-year option to purchase up to 10,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an employee that vests in twelve equal quarterly installments.

In December 2017, in connection with the Company's acquisition of Screen Media Ventures and the employment by the Company of certain key employees of Screen Media Ventures, the Company granted a five-year option to purchase up to 75,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an employee that vests in twelve quarterly installments and a five-year option to purchase up to 50,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to another employee that vests in semi-annual installments over a three year period.

In October 2017 the Company granted a five-year option to purchase up to 50,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an employee that vests in twelve quarterly installments.

In March 2017 the Company granted a five-year option to purchase up to 75,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to an employee that vests in quarterly installments of 6,250 shares commencing June 30, 2017.

In January 2017, the Company granted five-year options to purchase up to 100,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock to three officers that vest in eight equal quarterly installments commencing March 31, 2017 and which are exercisable at \$6.50 per share. In 2017, the Company granted additional options to non-management grantees to purchase up to an aggregate of 390,000 shares at exercise prices between \$6.50 and \$9.74. All of these options were granted under the Company's 2017 Long-Term Incentive Plan.

The shares of restricted stock, and the stock options and Class A Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of such stock options, as described above were issued pursuant to written compensatory plans or arrangements with our officers, directors, and employees, including the 2017 Long Term Incentive Plan. Prior to March 2018, such grants were made in reliance on the exemption set forth in Section 4(a)(2) under the Securities Act. On March 20, 2018, the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-8 to register the shares of Class A Common Stock issued and issuable pursuant to the Company's 2017 Long Term Incentive Plan.

Item 16. Exhibits

A list of the exhibits required by Item 601 of Regulation S-K to be filed as part of this registration statement is set forth in the Exhibit Index on page II-9.

Item 17. Undertakings

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

(2) That, for the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(6) That for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933 in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

(i) any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;

(ii) any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;

(iii) the portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and

(iv) any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned to the purchaser.

(h) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in Cos Cob, Connecticut, on the 15th day of June, 2020.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT INC.

By: /s/ William J. Rouhana, Jr.

Name: William J. Rouhana, Jr.

Title: Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

	Name	Position	Date
By:	<u>/s/ William J. Rouhana Jr.</u> William J. Rouhana Jr.	Chairman and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Scott W. Seaton</u> Scott W. Seaton	Vice Chairman and Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Christopher Mitchell</u> Christopher Mitchell	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Daniel Sanchez</u> Daniel Sanchez	Chief Accounting Officer (Principal Accounting Officer)	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Amy Newmark</u> Amy Newmark	Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Cosmo DeNicola</u> Cosmo DeNicola	Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Fred Cohen</u> Fred Cohen	Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Christina Weiss Lurie</u> Christina Weiss Lurie	Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Diana Wilkin</u> Diana Wilkin	Director	June 15, 2020
By:	<u>/s/ Martin Pompadur</u> Martin Pompadur	Director	June 15, 2020

EXHIBIT INDEX

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement between the Company and Ladenburg Thalmann & Co., Inc., as representative of the several underwriters named therein (1)
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation (2)
3.2	Bylaws (2)
4.1	Form of Indenture, by and between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association (1)
4.2	Form of Supplemental Indenture between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee (1)
4.3	Form of [*]% Notes due 2025 (included as Exhibit A to the Form of Supplemental Indenture filed as Exhibit 4.2)
5.1	Opinion of Graubard Miller (1)
23.1	Consent of Rosenfield and Company, PLLC (1)
23.2	Consent of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP (1)
23.3	Consent of Graubard Miller (included in its opinion filed as Exhibit 5.1)
99.1	Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Information as of and for the year ended December 31, 2019 (1)

(1) Filed herewith.

(2) Incorporated by reference to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 1-A (SEC File No. 024-10704).

\$[] ,000,000

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.

[] % Notes due 20[]

UNDERWRITING AGREEMENT

June [], 2020

Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.
As Representative of the several
Underwriters named in Schedule I,
277 Park Ave, 26th floor
New York, NY 10172

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), confirms its respective agreements with Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc. (“**Ladenburg**”) and each of the other underwriters named in Schedule I (collectively, the “**Underwriters**,” which term shall also include any underwriter substituted as hereinafter provided in Section 10 hereof), for whom Ladenburg is acting as representative (in such capacity, the “**Representative**”), with respect to (i) the sale by the Company and the purchase by the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, of the respective principal amount of the Company’s [] % Senior Unsecured Notes due 2024 (the “**Notes**”), set forth in Schedule I, and (ii) the grant by the Company to the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, of the option to purchase up to an aggregate of \$[] additional principal amount of notes to cover over-allotments, if any, on the terms set forth in Section 2(b) (this “**Agreement**”). The aforesaid aggregate \$[] ,000,000 principal amount of Notes (the “**Initial Securities**”) to be purchased by the Underwriters and all or any part of the \$[] principal amount of the notes subject to the option described in Section 2(b) hereof (the “**Option Securities**”) are herein called, collectively, the “**Securities**.” The Securities will be issued under the indenture dated as of [*], 2020 between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “**Trustee**”, as amended and supplemented by that certain Supplemental Indenture to be dated as of [*], 2020 (such indenture, as so amended and supplemented, the “**Indenture**”).

The Company understands that the Underwriters propose to make a public offering of the Securities as soon as the Representative deems advisable after this Agreement has been executed and delivered.

The Company has filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement on Form S-1 (No. 333-[]), covering the public offering and sale of certain securities, including the Securities, under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**1933 Act**”), and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder (the “**1933 Act Regulations**”), which shelf registration statement has become effective under the 1933 Act. Such registration statement as of any time, means such registration statement as amended by any post-effective amendments thereto at such time, including the exhibits and any schedules thereto at such time and the documents otherwise deemed to be a part thereof as of such time pursuant to Rule 430A under the 1933 Act Regulations (“**Rule 430A**”), is referred to herein as the “**Registration Statement**,” provided, however, that the “Registration Statement” without reference to a time means such registration statement as amended by any post-effective amendments thereto as of the time of the first contract of sale for the Securities, which time shall be considered the “new effective date” of such registration statement with respect to the Securities within the meaning of paragraph (f)(2) of Rule 430A, including the exhibits and schedules thereto as of such time and the documents otherwise deemed to be a part thereof as of such time pursuant to the Rule 430A. Any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) of the 1933 Act Regulations is herein referred to as the “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**” and, after such filing, the term “**Registration Statement**” shall include the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement. Each preliminary prospectus supplement and the base prospectus contained in the Registration Statement used in connection with the offering of the Securities, are collectively referred to herein as a “**preliminary prospectus**.” Promptly after execution and delivery of this Agreement, the Company will prepare and file a final prospectus supplement and base prospectus relating to the Securities in accordance with the provisions of Rule 424(b) under the 1933 Act Regulations (“**Rule 424(b)**”). The final prospectus supplement and base prospectus, in the form first furnished to the Underwriters for use in connection with the offering of the Securities, are collectively referred to herein as the “**Prospectus**.” For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, any preliminary prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to any of the foregoing shall be deemed to include the copy filed with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval system (or any successor system) (“**EDGAR**”).

As used in this Agreement:

“**Applicable Time**” means 8:30 a.m., Eastern time, on June 21, 2019 or such other time as agreed by the Company and the Representative.

“**General Disclosure Package**” means any Issuer General Use Free Writing Prospectuses issued at or prior to the Applicable Time, the most recent preliminary prospectus relating to the Securities that is distributed to investors prior to the Applicable Time and the information included on Schedule II, all considered together.

“**Issuer Free Writing Prospectus**” means any “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“**Rule 433**”), including without limitation any “free writing prospectus” (as defined in Rule 405 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“**Rule 405**”)) relating to the Securities that is (i) required to be filed with the Commission by the Company, (ii) a “road show that is a written communication” within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i), whether or not required to be filed with the Commission, or (iii) exempt from filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i) because it contains a description of the Securities or of the offering that does not reflect the final terms, in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g).

“**Issuer General Use Free Writing Prospectus**” means any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus that is intended for general distribution to prospective investors (other than a “*bona fide* electronic road show,” as defined in Rule 433), as evidenced by its being specified in Schedule II.

“**Issuer Limited Use Free Writing Prospectus**” means any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus that is not an Issuer General Use Free Writing Prospectus.

“**Testing-the-Waters Communication**” means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the 1933 Act.

“**Written Testing-the-Waters Communication**” means any Testing-the-Waters Communication that is a written communication within the meaning of Rule 405 under the 1933 Act.

1. Representations and Warranties.

(a) *Representations and Warranties by the Company.* The Company represents and warrants to each Underwriter as of the date hereof, the Applicable Time, the Closing Time (as defined below) and any Date of Delivery (as defined below), and agrees with each Underwriter, as follows:

(i) Registration Statement and Prospectuses. The Company meets the requirements for use of Form S-1 under the 1933 Act for the offering and sale of the Securities contemplated by this Agreement and the Securities have been and remain eligible for registration by the Company on such shelf registration statement. Each of the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto has (A) been prepared by the Company in conformity with the requirements of the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations; (B) been filed with the Commission under the 1933 Act; (C) become effective under the 1933 Act; and (D) been delivered by the Company to the Representative. The Company has complied to the Commission’s satisfaction with all requests of the Commission for additional or supplemental information. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment thereto has been issued under the 1933 Act, no order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued and no proceedings for any of those purposes have been instituted or are pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, contemplated. The Company has complied with each request (if any) from the Commission for additional information.

Each of the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto, at the time of its effectiveness and at each deemed effective date with respect to the Underwriters pursuant to Rule 430A under the 1933 Act Regulations, conformed and will conform in all material respects, at the time it became effective, to the requirements of the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations. Each preliminary prospectus (including the prospectus filed as part of the Registration Statement as originally filed or as part of any amendment or supplement thereto), any supplement thereto or any prospectus wrapper prepared in connection therewith, and the Prospectus conformed in all material respects when filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) of the 1933 Act Regulations to the requirements of the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations. Each preliminary prospectus delivered to the Underwriters for use in connection with this offering and the Prospectus was or will be identical to the electronically transmitted copies thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(ii) Accurate Disclosure. Neither the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement nor any amendment thereto, at the times they became effective, at the Closing Time or at any Date of Delivery, contained, contains or will contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted, omits or will omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading. As of the Applicable Time, neither (A) the General Disclosure Package nor (B) any individual Issuer Limited Use Free Writing Prospectus, when considered together with the General Disclosure Package, and (C) any individual Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, when considered together with the General Disclosure Package, contained, contains or will contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted, omits or will omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. Neither the Prospectus nor any amendment or supplement thereto (including any prospectus wrapper), as of its date, at the time of any filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b), at the Closing Time or at any Date of Delivery, contained, contains or will contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted, omits or will omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

The representations and warranties in this subsection shall not apply to statements in or omissions from the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package, any individual Issuer Limited Use Free Writing Prospectus or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto (including any prospectus wrapper)), made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company through the Representative by or on behalf of any Underwriter specifically for inclusion therein. For purposes of this Agreement, the only information so furnished shall be the information in the thirteenth and fourteenth paragraphs under the heading “Underwriting” in the Prospectus (collectively, the “**Underwriter Information**”).

(iii) Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses. Each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus conformed or will conform in all material respects to the requirements of the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations on the date of first use, and the Company has complied with all prospectus delivery and any filing requirements applicable to such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus pursuant to the 1933 Act Regulations. The Company has not made any offer relating to the Securities that would constitute an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus without the prior written consent of the Representative. The Company has retained in accordance with the 1933 Act Regulations all Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses that were not required to be filed pursuant to the 1933 Act Regulations. No Issuer Free Writing Prospectus conflicts or will conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, including any document deemed incorporated by reference therein, and any preliminary or other prospectus deemed to be a part thereof that has not been superseded or modified.

(iv) Company Not Ineligible Issuer. The Company was not, at the time of filing of Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto and at the earliest time thereafter that the Company or another offering participant made a *bona fide* offer (within the meaning of Rule 164(h)(2) of the 1933 Act Regulations) of the Securities, and at the date hereof is not, an “ineligible issuer” (as defined in Rule 405 of the 1933 Act Regulations), without taking account of any determination by the Commission pursuant to Rule 405 that it is not necessary that the Company be considered an ineligible issuer.

(v) Independent Accountants. The accountants who certified the financial statements and supporting schedules included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus are independent public accountants as required by the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**1934 Act**”), and the rules and regulations of the Commission under the 1934 Act (the “**1934 Act Regulations**”), if applicable, and with respect to Rosenfield &Co., PLLC (the “Auditor”), the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. The Auditor has not, during the periods covered by the financial statements included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, provided to the Company any non-audit services, as such term is defined in Section 10A(g) of the 1934 Act.

(vi) Financial Statements; Non-GAAP Financial Measures. The historical financial statements (including the related notes and supporting schedules) included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus comply as to form in all material respects with the requirements of Regulation S-X under the 1933 Act, are accurate in all material respects and present fairly the financial position of the Company on a consolidated basis at the dates indicated; said financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (“GAAP”) applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods involved. The supporting schedules, if any, present fairly in accordance with GAAP the information required to be stated therein. The selected financial data and the summary financial information included or incorporated in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus present fairly the information shown therein in all material respects and have been compiled on a basis consistent with that of the audited financial statements included therein. The financial statements, including any statement of revenues and certain expenses, of the businesses or properties acquired or proposed to be acquired, if any, included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus present fairly in all material respects the information set forth therein, have been prepared in conformity with GAAP applied on a consistent basis, except as noted therein, and otherwise have been prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial statement requirements of Rule 3-05 or Rule 3-14 of Regulation S-X with respect to the Company’s operations.] The pro forma financial statements and the related notes thereto included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus present fairly in all material respects the information shown therein, have been prepared in accordance with the Commission’s rules and guidelines with respect to pro forma financial statements and have been properly compiled on the bases described therein, and the assumptions used in the preparation thereof are reasonable and the adjustments used therein are appropriate to give effect to the transactions and circumstances referred to therein. The pro forma financial statements included or incorporated in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus comply as to form with the applicable requirements of Regulation S-X of the 1933 Act in all material respects. No other financial statements, supporting schedules or pro forma financial statements of the Company are required to be included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus under the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations. All disclosures included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus regarding “non-GAAP financial measures” (as such term is defined by the rules and regulations of the Commission) comply in all material respects with Regulation G of the 1934 Act and Item 10 of Regulation S-K of the 1933 Act, to the extent applicable. The interactive data in eXtensible Business Reporting Language included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus fairly presents the information called for in all material respects and has been prepared in accordance with the Commission’s rules and guidelines applicable thereto. Each of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus discloses all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the Company with unconsolidated entities or other persons that may have a material current or future effect on the Company’s financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, (a) neither the Company nor any of its direct and indirect Subsidiaries, including each entity disclosed or described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus as being a Subsidiary of the Company (each, a “Subsidiary” and, collectively, the “Subsidiaries”), has incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions other than in the ordinary course of business, (b) the Company has not declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock, (c) there has not been any change in the capital stock of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or, other than in the course of business, any grants under any stock compensation plan, and (d) there has not been any material adverse change in the Company’s long-term or short-term debt.

(vii) No Material Adverse Change in Business. Since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, except as otherwise stated therein, (A) there has been no material adverse change or prospective material adverse change in or affecting the business affairs, business, earnings, condition (financial or otherwise), results of operations, shareholders' equity, assets, properties, management or prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries considered as one enterprise (including all of the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries), whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business (a "**Material Adverse Effect**"), (B) there have been no transactions entered into by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, other than those in the ordinary course of business, which are material with respect to such entities considered as one enterprise or incurred any liability or obligation, direct or contingent, that is material to such entities considered as one enterprise, and (C) no officer or director of the Company has resigned from any position with the Company.

(viii) Good Standing of the Company. The Company has been duly organized, is validly existing and in good standing as a corporation under the laws of their respective jurisdiction of incorporation or formation with full power and authority to own, lease and operate its properties and to conduct its business as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and to enter into and perform its obligations under this Agreement, the Indenture and the Securities. The Company is duly qualified as a foreign corporation to transact business and in good standing in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is required, whether by reason of the ownership or leasing of property or the conduct of its businesses, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(ix) Capitalization. The authorized, issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company are as set forth in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the caption "Capitalization" (except for subsequent issuances, if any, pursuant to this Agreement, pursuant to reservations, agreements or employee benefit plans referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus or pursuant to the exercise, redemption, or exchange of convertible or exchangeable securities, options or warrants referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus). The issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company have been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and non-assessable, conform to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement, General Disclosure Package and Prospectus and were issued in compliance with federal and state securities laws and not in violation of any preemptive right, resale right, right of first refusal or offer or similar right. The issuance of such shares of capital stock of the Company was exempt from registration or qualification under the 1933 Act and applicable state securities laws. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, no options, warrants or other rights to purchase, agreements or other obligations to issue, or rights to convert any obligations into or exchange any securities or interests for shares of the Company's or its Subsidiaries' capital stock or exchange any securities for shares of the Company's capital stock outstanding.

(x) Authorization of Agreements. This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company. The Indenture has been duly authorized by the Company and has been duly qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “**Trust Indenture Act**”) and, when duly executed and delivered in accordance with its terms by the Company and the Trustee, will constitute a valid and legally binding agreement of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms. All approvals, if any, of such documents required under the Trust Indenture Act have been obtained and are in full force and effect. The Securities have been duly authorized by the Company and, when duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered as provided in the Indenture and paid for as provided herein, will be duly and validly issued and outstanding and will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms. The Securities will be entitled to the benefits of the Indenture. All statements relating to the Notes contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus conform, in all material respects, to the Securities, and the issuance of the Securities is not subject to any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or offer or similar rights.

(xi) Form 8-A. The Company will file prior to the Closing Time a registration statement on Form 8-A relating to the Securities pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act.

(xii) Registration Rights. There are no contracts, agreements or understandings between the Company and any person granting such person the right to require the Company to file a registration statement under the 1933 Act with respect to any securities of the Company owned or to be owned by such person or to require the Company to include such securities in the securities registered pursuant to the Registration Statement or in any securities being registered pursuant to any other registration statement filed by the Company under the 1933 Act.

(xiii) Absence of Violations and Defaults. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is (A) in violation of its charter, bylaws or similar organizational documents, (B) in default in the performance or observance of any obligation, agreement, covenant or condition contained in any contract, indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan or credit agreement, note, lease, license or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound or to which any of the properties or assets of the Company or any Subsidiary is subject (collectively, “**Agreements and Instruments**”), except for such defaults that would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect, or (C) except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, in violation of any federal, state, local or foreign statute, rule, regulation or any order, judgment, writ or decree of any arbitrator, court or governmental, regulatory or administrative agency, authority or body or any self-regulatory organization or other non-governmental regulatory authority having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective properties, assets or operations (each, a “**Governmental Entity**”), except for such violations that would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xiv) Absence of Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, the Indenture and the Notes and the consummation of the transactions contemplated herein, therein and in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus (including the issuance and sale of the Securities and the use of the proceeds from the sale of the Securities as described therein under the caption “**Use of Proceeds**”) and the compliance by the Company with its obligations hereunder and thereunder have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate or other action and do not and will not, whether with or without the giving of notice or passage of time or both, conflict with or constitute a breach of, or default or Repayment Event (as defined below) under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any properties or assets of the Company or any Subsidiary pursuant to, the Agreements and Instruments (except for such conflicts, breaches, defaults or Repayment Events or liens, charges or encumbrances that would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect or which have been waived), nor will such action result in any violation of the provisions of the charter, bylaws or similar organizational documents of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, any applicable law, statute, rule, regulation, judgment, order, writ or decree of any Governmental Entity. As used herein, a “**Repayment Event**” means any event or condition which gives the holder of any note, debenture or other evidence of indebtedness (or any person acting on such holder’s behalf) the right to require the repurchase, redemption or repayment of all or a portion of such indebtedness by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(xv) No Defaults; Violations. No material default exists in the due performance and observance of any term, covenant or condition of any material license, contract, indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, note, loan or credit agreement, or any other agreement or instrument evidencing an obligation for borrowed money, or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company may be bound or to which any of the properties or assets of the Company is subject. The Company is not in violation of any term or provision of its charter, by-laws or similar organizational documents, or in violation of any franchise, license, permit, applicable law, rule, regulation, judgment or decree of any Governmental Entity.

(xvi) Absence of Labor Dispute. No labor dispute with the employees of the Company or any Subsidiary exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is imminent, and the Company is not aware of any existing or imminent labor disturbance by the employees of any of its or any Subsidiary's principal suppliers, manufacturers, customers or contractors, which, in either case, would result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xvii) Employee Benefits. (A) The Company and each of its Subsidiaries or their "ERISA Affiliates" (as defined below) are in compliance in all respects with all applicable provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, including the regulations and published interpretations thereunder ("**ERISA**"); (B) no "reportable event" (as defined in ERISA) has occurred with respect to any "employee benefit plan" (as defined in ERISA) for which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or ERISA Affiliates would have any liability; (C) the Company and each of its Subsidiaries or their ERISA Affiliates have not incurred and do not reasonably expect to incur liability under Title IV of ERISA with respect to termination of, or withdrawal from, any "employee benefit plan"; and (D) each "employee benefit plan" for which the Company and each of its Subsidiaries or any of their ERISA Affiliates would have any liability that is intended to be qualified under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations and published interpretations thereunder (collectively, the "**Code**"), is so qualified in all material respects and nothing has occurred, whether by action or by failure to act, which would cause the loss of such qualification; except, in the cases of (A), (B), and (C), as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. "**ERISA Affiliate**" means, with respect to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, any member of any group of organizations described in Sections 414(b), (c) or (m) of the Code or Section 4001(b) (1) of ERISA of which the Company or such Subsidiary is a member.

(xviii) Absence of Proceedings. There is no action, suit, proceeding, inquiry or investigation before or brought by any Governmental Entity now pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened against the Company or any Subsidiary, which is required to be disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, or which would reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, or would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the consummation of the transactions contemplated in this Agreement or the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder; and the aggregate of all pending legal or governmental proceedings to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or of which any of their respective properties or assets is the subject which are not described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, including ordinary routine litigation incidental to the business, would not result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xix) Accuracy of Descriptions. The statements made in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the caption “Description of the Notes,” insofar as it purports to constitute a summary of the terms of the Securities, under the caption “Risk Factors,” and under the caption “Certain U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations” and “U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations” insofar as such statements constitute summaries of the terms of statutes, rules or regulations, legal matters or governmental proceedings or agreements, contracts and other documents, are accurate and fair summaries of the terms of such statutes, rules or regulations, legal matters or governmental proceedings or agreements, contracts and other documents in all material respects. All agreements between the Company or any of its Subsidiaries and any other party expressly referenced in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus are legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company or such Subsidiary, as applicable, enforceable against the Company or such Subsidiaries, as applicable, as appropriate, in accordance with their respective terms, except to the extent that enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, fraudulent transfer, moratorium or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally and by general equitable principles and, with respect to equitable relief, the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought (regardless of whether enforcement is sought in a proceeding at law or in equity) and, with respect to any indemnification provisions contained therein, except as rights under those provisions may be limited by applicable law or policies underlying such law. The Company’s operating policies, investment guidelines and other policies described in the Registration Statement, General Disclosure Package and Prospectus accurately reflect in all material respects the current intentions of the Company with respect to the operation of its business, and no material deviation from such guidelines or policies is currently contemplated.

(xx) Accuracy of Exhibits. There are no legal or governmental proceedings or contracts or other documents of a character required to be described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus or, in the case of documents to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement, which are not described and filed as required.

(xxi) Absence of Further Requirements. No consent, approval, authorization, license, certification, clearance, permits or order of, or filing or registration of or with, any Governmental Entity is necessary or required for the execution, delivery and performance by the Company or any Subsidiary of its obligations hereunder or under the Indenture or Securities, in connection with the offering, issuance and sale of the Securities hereunder, or its consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, the Indenture, the Securities, or the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, or the application of the proceeds from the sale of the Securities as described under “Use of Proceeds” in the Registration Statement, General Disclosure Package and Prospectus, except such as have been obtained or made and except for such as have been obtained or as may be required under the 1933 Act, the 1933 Act Regulations, the rules of the Nasdaq Global Market, applicable state or foreign securities laws or the by-laws and rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (“FINRA”).

(xxii) Possession of Licenses and Permits. Except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries possess such permits, licenses, approvals, consents, permits, certifications, clearances, orders and other authorizations (collectively, “**Governmental Licenses**”) issued by the appropriate Governmental Entities necessary to conduct the business now operated by them, except where the failure so to possess would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect. The Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with the terms and conditions of all Governmental Licenses, except where the failure so to comply would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect. All of the Governmental Licenses are valid and in full force and effect, except when the invalidity of such Governmental Licenses or the failure of such Governmental Licenses to be in full force and effect would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any Governmental Licenses which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, would result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxiii) Title to Personal Property. Each of the Company and its Subsidiaries have good and marketable title to all of its assets and personal property owned by it, free and clear of all liens, encumbrances and defects, except such as are described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus or such as do not materially affect the value of such property and do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and its Subsidiaries; and all assets and personal property held under lease by the Company and its Subsidiaries are held by it under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases, with such exceptions as do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such assets by the Company and its Subsidiaries and the Company does not have notice of any material claim of any sort that has been asserted by anyone adverse to the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries under any such leases or affecting or questioning the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries to be in the continued possession of the leased premises under such leases.

(xxiv) Property. (i) The Company and its Subsidiaries have good and marketable fee simple title (or in the case of ground leases, a valid leasehold interest) to all real property owned by them and the improvements (exclusive of improvements owned by tenants or by landlords, if applicable) located thereon, in each case, free and clear of all mortgages, pledges, liens, security interests, claims, restrictions or encumbrances of any kind, except such as (A) are described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, (B) will not, singly or in the aggregate, materially affect the value of such property and do not interfere in any material respect with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or (C) would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect; (ii) except as otherwise set forth in or described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and except as would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected have a Material Adverse Effect, all of the leases and subleases of the Company and its Subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, and under which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries hold properties described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, are in full force and effect, and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has any notice of any claim of any sort that has been asserted by anyone adverse to the rights of the Company or any Subsidiary under any of the leases or subleases mentioned above, or affecting or questioning the rights of the Company or such Subsidiary to the continued possession of the leased or subleased premises under any such lease or sublease; (iii) none of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries has received from any Governmental Entities any written notice of any condemnation or zoning change affecting the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries or any part thereof, and none of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries knows of any condemnation or zoning change affecting the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries which is threatened and, in each case, which if consummated would reasonably be expected to, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect; (iv) each of the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries complies with all applicable codes, ordinances, laws and regulations (including without limitation, building and zoning codes, laws and regulations and laws relating to access to the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries), except for failures to the extent disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and except for such failures to comply that would not individually or in the aggregate reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; (v) neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received written notice of proposed material special assessment or any proposed change in any property tax, zoning or land use law or availability of water affecting any property that would reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect; and (vi) to the knowledge of the Company and its Subsidiaries, except as set forth in or described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus or reflected in the pro forma financial statements, and except as would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected have a Material Adverse Effect, there are no uncured events of default, or events that with the giving of notice or passage of time, or both, would constitute an event of default, by any tenant under any of the terms and provisions of the leases.

(xxv) No Acquisitions or Dispositions. (A) There are no contracts, letters of intent, term sheets, agreements, arrangements or understandings with respect to the direct or indirect acquisition or disposition by any of the Company or its Subsidiaries of interests in assets or real property that are required to be described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus that are not so described; and (B) neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has sold any real property to a third party during the immediately preceding twelve calendar months except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(xxvi) Title Insurance. Title insurance in favor of the Company and the Subsidiaries has been obtained with respect to each property owned by any such entity, except where the failure to maintain such title insurance would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxvii) Mortgages; Deeds of Trust. Except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not issued any debt and has no debt outstanding. None of the properties owned by the Company or its Subsidiaries is encumbered by any credit agreements, mortgages, deeds of trust, guaranties, side letters, and other documents evidencing, securing or otherwise relating to any secured or unsecured indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(xxviii) Environmental Laws. Except as would not, singly or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect, (A) neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is in violation of any federal, state, local or foreign statute, law, rule, regulation, ordinance, code, policy or rule of common law or any judicial or administrative interpretation thereof, including any judicial or administrative order, consent, decree or judgment, relating to pollution or protection of human health, the environment (including, without limitation, ambient air, surface water, groundwater, land surface or subsurface strata) or wildlife, including, without limitation, laws and regulations relating to the release or threatened release of chemicals, pollutants, contaminants, wastes, toxic substances, hazardous substances, petroleum or petroleum products, asbestos-containing materials, mold or any hazardous materials as defined by or regulated under any Environmental Laws, as defined below (collectively, "**Hazardous Materials**") or to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, disposal, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials (collectively, "**Environmental Laws**"), (B) the Company and its Subsidiaries have all permits, authorizations and approvals required under any applicable Environmental Laws and are each in compliance with their requirements, and (C) there are no pending or known threatened administrative, regulatory or judicial actions, suits, demands, demand letters, claims, liens, notices of noncompliance or violation, investigation or proceedings relating to any Environmental Law against the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(xxix) Accounting Controls and Disclosure Controls. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries (A) make and keep accurate books and records and (B) maintain effective internal control over financial reporting (as defined under Rule 13-a15 and 15d-15 under the rules and regulations of the Commission under the 1934 Act Regulations) and a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that (1) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, (2) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of the Company's financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain accountability for its assets, (3) access to the Company's assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, and (4) the recorded accountability for the Company's assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. Since the Company's incorporation, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there has been (A) no material weakness in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (whether or not remediated) and (B) no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected or is reasonably likely to materially affect the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Since the date of the most recent audited financial statements of the Company, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not been advised of (A) any significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal controls that could adversely affect the ability of the Company to record, process, summarize and report financial data, and (B) any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the internal controls of the Company.

(xxx) Compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or any of the Company's directors or officers, in their respective capacities as such, to comply with all provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder or implementing provisions thereof (the "**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**") that are then in effect and with which the Company is required to comply as of the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, and is actively taking steps to ensure that it will be in compliance with other provisions of the Sarbanes Oxley Act not currently in effect, upon the effectiveness of such provisions, or which will become applicable to the Company at all times after the effectiveness of the Registration Statement.

(xxxi) Critical Accounting Policies. The description of the Company's accounting policies included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus accurately and fully describes, in all material respects, (A) the accounting policies that the Company believes are the most important in the portrayal of the Company's financial condition and results of operations and that require management's most difficult, subjective or complex judgments ("**Critical Accounting Policies**"); (B) the judgments and uncertainties affecting the application of Critical Accounting Policies; and (C) the likelihood that materially different amounts would be reported under different conditions or using different assumptions and an explanation thereof

(xxxii) Payment of Taxes. The Company and its current (and with respect to (A) and (B), former) Subsidiaries (A) have paid all material federal, state, local and foreign taxes (whether imposed directly, through withholding or otherwise and including any interest, additions to tax or penalties applicable thereto) required to be paid through the date hereof, other than those being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings and for which adequate reserves have been provided on the books of the applicable entity, (B) have timely filed all material tax returns or extensions thereof required to be filed through the date hereof, and all such tax returns are correct and complete in all material respects, and (C) have established adequate reserves for all taxes that have accrued but are not yet due and payable. The charges, accruals and reserves on the books of the Company and its Subsidiaries in respect of any income and corporation tax liability for any years not finally determined are adequate to meet any assessments or re-assessments for additional income tax for any years not finally determined, except to the extent of any inadequacy that would not result in a Material Adverse Effect. No tax deficiency has been asserted against the Company or any of its current or former Subsidiaries, nor does any such entity know of any tax deficiency that is likely to be asserted and, if determined adversely to any such entity, would reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxiii) Possession of Intellectual Property. The Company and its Subsidiaries own or possess adequate rights to use all material patents, patent applications, trademarks, service marks, trade names, trademark registrations, service mark registrations, copyrights, licenses, know-how, software, systems and technology (including trade secrets and other unpatented and/or unpatentable proprietary or confidential information, systems or procedures) necessary for the conduct of its business as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, and has no reason to believe that the conduct of its business will conflict with, and has not received any notice of any claim of conflict with, any such rights of others. There is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened action, suit, proceeding, or claim by others challenging the rights of the Company or any Subsidiary in or to such rights. There is no pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding, or claim by others that the Company or any Subsidiary infringes, misappropriates, or otherwise violates any such rights of others.

(xxxiv) Insurance. The Company and its Subsidiaries carry or are entitled to the benefits of insurance, with financially sound and reputable insurers, in such amounts and covering such risks as the Company believes is generally maintained by companies of established repute engaged in the same or similar business and in such amounts as is commercially reasonable in light of nature of the Company's assets and properties and the value of its assets and properties, in the aggregate, by the Company and its Subsidiaries, and all such insurance is in full force and effect. The Company has no reason to believe that it will not be able (A) to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such policies expire or (B) to obtain comparable coverage from similar institutions as may be necessary or appropriate to conduct its business as now conducted and at a cost that would not result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has been denied any insurance coverage which it has sought or for which it has applied.

(xxxv) Investment Company Act. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary is required, or upon the issuance and sale of the Securities as herein contemplated and the application of the net proceeds therefrom as described under “Use of Proceeds” in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus will be required, to register as an “investment company” or an entity “controlled” by an “investment company” within the meaning of such terms under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

(xxxvi) Absence of Manipulation. Neither the Company nor any affiliate of the Company has taken, nor will the Company or any affiliate take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that has constituted or that could reasonably be expected to cause or result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Securities, and has taken no action which would directly or indirectly violate Regulation M or which would constitute a special selling effort as such term is defined under Regulation M.

(xxxvii) Foreign Corrupt Practices Act. None of the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or, to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer, agent, employee, affiliate or other person acting on behalf of such entity is aware of or has taken any action, directly or indirectly, that would result in a violation by such persons of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (the “FCPA”), including, without limitation, making use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce corruptly in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay or authorization of the payment of any money, or other property, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to any “foreign official” (as such term is defined in the FCPA) or any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office, in contravention of the FCPA and the Company and, to the knowledge of the Company, its affiliates have conducted their businesses in compliance with the FCPA, and the Company has instituted and maintains policies and procedures designed to ensure, and which are reasonably expected to continue to ensure, continued compliance by the Company and its Subsidiaries therewith.

(xxxviii) Money Laundering Laws. The operations of the Company and its Subsidiaries are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, the money laundering statutes of all jurisdictions, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any Governmental Entity (collectively, the “**Money Laundering Laws**”); and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any Governmental Entity involving the Company or any Subsidiary with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the best knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(xxxix) No Conflicts with OFAC Laws. None of the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or, to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer, agent, employee, affiliate or representative of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is an individual or entity (“**Person**”) currently the subject or target of any sanctions administered or enforced by the United States Government, including, without limitation, the U.S. Department of the Treasury’s Office of Foreign Assets Control, the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty’s Treasury, or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, “**Sanctions**”), nor is the Company located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions; and the Company will not directly or indirectly use the net proceeds of the sale of the Securities, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such net proceeds to any Subsidiaries, joint venture partners or other Person, to fund any activities of or business with any Person, or in any country or territory, that, at the time of such funding, is the subject of Sanctions or in any other manner that will result in a violation by any Person (including any Person participating in the transaction, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise) of Sanctions.

(xl) Distribution of Offering Material. The Company and its Subsidiaries have not distributed and, prior to the later to occur of the Closing Time and the completion of the distribution of the Securities, will not distribute any offering material in connection with the offering and sale of the Securities other than any preliminary prospectus, the Prospectus, any issuer free writing prospectus, or any other materials, if any, permitted by the 1933 Act.

(xli) Restrictions on Distributions. No Subsidiary of the Company is currently prohibited, directly or indirectly, from paying any distributions to the Company, from making any other distribution on such Subsidiary’s equity interests, from repaying to the Company any loans or advances to such Subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any of such Subsidiary’s property or assets to the Company or any other Subsidiary of the Company, except as described in or contemplated by the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(xlii) Prior Sales of Capital Stock. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not sold, issued or distributed any shares of capital stock.

(xliii) No Equity Awards. Except for grants pursuant to equity incentive plans disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not granted to any person or entity, a stock option or other equity-based award to purchase or receive capital stock pursuant to an equity-based compensation plan or otherwise.

(xlv) No Finder's Fee. Except as disclosed in responses to the FINRA questionnaires completed by the Company in connection with the Offering and for the Underwriters' discounts and commissions payable by the Company to the Underwriters in connection with the offering of the Securities contemplated herein or as otherwise disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, neither the Company, nor to its knowledge, none of its affiliates, has incurred any liability for any brokerage commission, finder's, consenting or origination fees or similar payments in connection with the offering of the Securities contemplated hereby or entered into any other agreements, arrangements or understandings that may affect the Underwriter's compensation as directed by FINRA.

(xlv) Payments Within Twelve (12) Months. Except as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, the Company has not made any direct or indirect payments (in cash, securities or otherwise) to: (i) any person, as a finder's fee, consulting fee or otherwise, in consideration of such person raising capital for the Company or introducing to the Company persons who raised or provided capital to the Company; (ii) any FINRA member; or (iii) any person or entity that has any direct or indirect affiliation or association with any FINRA member, within the twelve (12) months prior to the effective date of the Registration Statement, other than the payment to the Underwriters as provided hereunder in connection with the offering of the Securities and other than to B. Riley FBR, Inc. in connection with an at-the-market offering pursuant to the Registration Statement as disclosed in the Company's response to the FINRA questionnaire completed in connection with the offering of the Securities.

(xlvi) Nasdaq Global Market Listing. The Company will apply to have the Securities approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Market prior to the Closing Time; the Company is in compliance with the rules and regulations of the Nasdaq Global Market, including without limitation, the requirements for continued listing of its common shares on the Nasdaq Global Market, and there are no actions, suits or proceedings pending, threatened or, to the Company's knowledge, contemplated, and the Company has not received any notice from the Nasdaq Global Market, regarding the revocation of such or otherwise regarding the delisting of its common shares from the Nasdaq Global Market .

(xlvii) Absence of Certain Relationships. Except as otherwise described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, no relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company or its Subsidiaries, on the one hand, and the directors, officers, stockholders, customers or suppliers of the Company, on the other hand, that is required to be described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus which is not so described and (ii) the Company has not, directly or indirectly, including through any Subsidiary, extended credit, arranged to extend credit, or renewed any extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan, to or for any executive officer of the Company, or to or for any family member or affiliate of any director or executive officer of the Company.

(xlviii) No Integration. The Company has not sold or issued any securities that would be integrated with the offering of the Securities contemplated by this Agreement pursuant to the 1933 Act, the 1933 Act Regulations or the interpretations thereof by the Commission.

(xlix) Lending Relationship. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company (A) does not have any material lending or other relationship with any bank or lending affiliate of any Underwriter and (B) does not intend to use any of the net proceeds from the sale of the Securities to repay any outstanding debt owed to any affiliate of any Underwriter or other FINRA members.

(l) No Ratings. The Company has no debt securities or preferred stock that is rated by any “nationally recognized statistical rating agency” (as such term is defined by the Commission for purposes of Rule 436(g)(2) of the 1933 Act).

(li) No FINRA Affiliations. There are no affiliations or associations between any member of FINRA and any of the Company's officers, directors or 5% or greater securityholders.

(lii) Statistical and Market-Related Data. All statistical and market-related data included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes, after reasonable inquiry, to be reliable and accurate, and such data agree with the sources from which they are derived, and, to the extent required, the Company has obtained the written consent to the use of such data from such sources.

(liii) Emerging Growth Company. From the time of the initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement to the Commission (or, if earlier, the first date on which the Company engaged directly or through any person authorized to act on its behalf in any Testing-the-Waters Communication) through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an “emerging growth company” as defined in Section 2(a) of the 1933 Act (an “**Emerging Growth Company**”).

(liv) Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company has not distributed any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications.

(lv) D&O Questionnaires. To the Company's knowledge, all information contained in the questionnaires (the “**Questionnaires**”) completed by each of the Company's directors and officers immediately prior to the Offering (the “**Insiders**”) as supplemented by all information concerning the Company's directors, officers and principal shareholders as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus provided to the Underwriters, is true and correct in all material respects and the Company has not become aware of any information which would cause the information disclosed in the Questionnaires to become materially inaccurate and incorrect.

(b) *Officer's Certificates.* Any certificate signed by any officer of the Company and delivered to the Representative or counsel for the Underwriters in connection with the offering of the Securities shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company as to matters covered thereby, to each Underwriter.

2. Sale and Delivery to Underwriters; Closing.

(a) *Initial Securities.* Subject to the terms and conditions and upon the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell to each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, and each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, agrees, to purchase from the Company, at the price per Note set forth in Schedule I, the principal amount of Initial Securities set forth opposite such Underwriter's name in Schedule I, plus any additional principal of Initial Securities which such Underwriter may become obligated to purchase pursuant to the provisions of Section 10 hereof, subject, in each case, to such adjustments among the Underwriters as the Representative in its sole discretion shall make to eliminate any sales or purchases of fractional Notes.

(b) *Option Securities.* In addition, subject to the terms and conditions and upon the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements herein set forth, the Company hereby grants an option to the Underwriters, severally and not jointly, to purchase up to an additional \$[*] principal amount of Option Securities at the price per Note set forth in Schedule I. The option hereby granted will expire 30 days after the date hereof and may be exercised in whole or in part from time to time only for the purpose of covering overallocments made in connection with the offering and distribution of the Initial Securities upon notice by the Representative to the Company setting forth the principal amount of Option Securities as to which the several Underwriters are then exercising the option and the time and date of payment and delivery for such Option Securities. Any such time and date of delivery (a "**Date of Delivery**") shall be determined by the Representative, but shall not be later than seven full business days after the exercise of said option, nor in any event prior to the Closing Time. If the option is exercised as to all or any portion of the Option Securities, each of the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, will purchase that proportion of the total number of Option Securities then being purchased which the number of Initial Securities set forth in Schedule I opposite the name of such Underwriter bears to the total principal amount of Initial Securities, subject, in each case, to such adjustments as the Representative in its sole discretion shall make to eliminate any sales or purchases of fractional Notes.

(c) *Delivery of and Payment for the Securities.* Payment of the purchase price for, and electronic delivery of, the Initial Securities shall be made at the offices of Blank Rome LLP, 1271 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020, or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company, at 11:00 A.M. (Eastern time) on the second (third, if the pricing occurs after 4:30 p.m. (Eastern time) on any given day) business day after the date hereof (unless postponed in accordance with the provisions of Section 10), or such other time not later than ten business days after such date as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company (such time and date of payment and delivery being herein called “**Closing Time**”). In addition, in the event that any or all of the Option Securities are purchased by the Underwriters, payment of the purchase price for, and electronic delivery of, such Option Securities shall be made at the above-mentioned offices, or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company, on each Date of Delivery as specified in the notice from the Representative to the Company. Payment shall be made to the Company by wire transfer of immediately available funds to a bank account designated by the Company against delivery to the Representative for the respective accounts of the Underwriters of certificates for the Securities to be purchased by them. It is understood that each Underwriter has authorized the Representative, for its account, to accept delivery of, receipt for, and make payment of the purchase price for, the Initial Securities and the Option Securities, if any, which it has agreed to purchase. Ladenburg, individually and not as representative of the Underwriters, may (but shall not be obligated to) make payment of the purchase price for the Initial Securities and the Option Securities, if any, to be purchased by any Underwriter whose funds have not been received by the Closing Time or the relevant Date of Delivery, as the case may be, but such payment shall not relieve such Underwriter from its obligations hereunder.

(d) *Denominations; Registration.* Electronic delivery of the Initial Securities and the Option Securities, if any, shall be in such denominations and registered in such names as the Representative may request in writing at least one full business day before the Closing Time or the relevant Date of Delivery, as the case may be. The Initial Securities and any Option Securities shall be delivered by or on behalf of the Company to the Representative, through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, for the account of the several Underwriters.

3. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants with each Underwriter as follows:

(a) *Compliance with Securities Regulations and Commission Requests.* The Company, subject to Section 3(b), will comply with the requirements of Rule 430, and will notify the Representative immediately, and confirm the notice in writing, (i) when any post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement shall become effective or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus shall have been filed, (ii) of the receipt of any comments from the Commission, (iii) of any request by the Commission for any amendment to the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus or for additional information, (iv) of the issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment or of any order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus, or of the suspension of the qualification of the Securities for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceedings for any of such purposes or of any examination pursuant to Section 8(e) of the 1933 Act concerning the Registration Statement and (v) if the Company becomes the subject of a proceeding under Section 8A of the 1933 Act in connection with the offering of the Securities. The Company will affect all filings required under Rule 424(b), in the manner and within the time period required by Rule 424(b) (without reliance on Rule 424(b)(8)), and will take such steps as it deems necessary to ascertain promptly whether the form of prospectus transmitted for filing under Rule 424(b) was received for filing by the Commission and, in the event that it was not, it will promptly file such prospectus. The Company will make every reasonable effort to prevent the issuance of any stop order, prevention or suspension and, if any such order is issued, to obtain the lifting thereof at the earliest possible moment.

(b) *Continued Compliance with Securities Laws.* The Company will comply with the 1933 Act, the 1933 Act Regulations, the 1934 Act and the 1934 Act Regulations so as to permit the completion of the distribution of the Securities as contemplated in this Agreement and in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. If at any time when a prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“**Rule 172**”), would be) required by the 1933 Act to be delivered in connection with sales of the Securities, any event shall occur or condition shall exist as a result of which it is necessary, in the opinion of counsel for the Underwriters or for the Company, to (i) amend the Registration Statement in order that the Registration Statement will not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, (ii) amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus in order that the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, as the case may be, will not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading in the light of the circumstances existing at the time it is delivered to a purchaser or (iii) amend the Registration Statement or amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, as the case may be, in order to comply with the requirements of the 1933 Act or the 1933 Act Regulations, the Company will (A) promptly give the Representative notice of such event, (B) furnish the Representative with copies of any such documents prior to such proposed filing or use, as the case may be, (C) promptly prepare any amendment or supplement as may be necessary to correct such statement or omission or to make the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus comply with such requirements and, a reasonable amount of time prior to any proposed filing or use, furnish the Representative with copies of any such amendment or supplement and (D) promptly file with the Commission any such amendment or supplement; provided that the Company shall not file or use any such amendment or supplement to which the Representative or counsel for the Underwriters shall reasonably object. The Company will furnish to the Underwriters such number of copies of such amendment or supplement as the Underwriters may reasonably request. The Company has given the Representative notice of any filings made pursuant to the 1934 Act or 1934 Act Regulations within 48 hours prior to the Applicable Time; the Company will give the Representative notice of its intention to make any such filing from the Applicable Time to the Closing Time and will furnish the Representative with copies of any such documents a reasonable amount of time prior to such proposed filing, as the case may be, and will not file or use any such document to which the Representative or counsel for the Underwriters shall reasonably object. If at any time when a prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172, would be) required by the 1933 Act to be delivered in connection with sales of the Securities and following issuance of an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus conflicted or would conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus relating to the Securities or included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representative and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus to eliminate or correct such conflict, untrue statement or omission.

(c) *Delivery of Registration Statements.* The Company has furnished or will deliver to the Representative and counsel for the Underwriters, without charge, signed electronic copies of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto (including electronic copies of the exhibits filed therewith) and signed electronic copies of all consents and certificates of experts, and will also deliver to the Representative, without charge, a conformed electronic copy of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto (without exhibits) for each of the Underwriters. The copies of the Registration Statement and each amendment thereto furnished to the Underwriters will be identical to the electronically transmitted copies thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(d) *Delivery of Prospectuses.* The Company has delivered to each Underwriter, without charge, as many electronic copies of each preliminary prospectus as such Underwriter reasonably requested, and the Company hereby consents to the use of such copies for purposes permitted by the 1933 Act. The Company will furnish to each Underwriter, without charge, during the period when a prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172, would be) required to be delivered under the 1933 Act, such number of electronic copies of the Prospectus (as amended or supplemented) as such Underwriter may reasonably request. The Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto furnished to the Underwriters will be identical to the electronically transmitted copies thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(e) *Blue Sky Qualifications.* The Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts, in cooperation with the Underwriters, to qualify the Securities for offering and sale under the applicable securities laws of such states and other jurisdictions (domestic or foreign) as the Representative may designate and to maintain such qualifications in effect so long as required to complete the distribution of the Securities; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to file any general consent to service of process or to qualify as a foreign corporation or as a dealer in securities in any jurisdiction in which it is not so qualified or to subject itself to taxation in respect of doing business in any jurisdiction in which it is not otherwise so subject.

(f) *Rule 158.* The Company will timely file such reports pursuant to the 1934 Act as are necessary in order to make generally available to its securityholders as soon as practicable an earnings statement for the purposes of, and to provide to the Underwriters the benefits contemplated by, the last paragraph of Section 11(a) of the 1933 Act (subject to Rule 158 under the 1933 Act).

(g) *Use of Proceeds.* The Company will use the net proceeds from the sale of the Securities in the manner set forth in the Registration Statement, General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the caption "Use of Proceeds."

(h) *Listing.* The Company will use its best efforts to list the Securities on the Nasdaq Global Market within 30 days of the Closing Time.

(i) *Restriction on Sale of Securities.* During a period of 60 days from the date of the Prospectus, the Company will not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, (i) directly or indirectly, offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise transfer or dispose of any debt securities or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for debt securities or file any registration statement under the 1933 Act with respect to any of the foregoing, or (ii) enter into any swap or any other agreement or any transaction that transfers, in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, the economic consequence of ownership of the debt securities, whether any such swap or transaction described in clause (i) or (ii) above is to be settled by delivery of debt securities or such other securities, in cash or otherwise. The foregoing sentence shall not apply to the Securities to be sold hereunder. For purposes of clarity, nothing shall prevent the Company from incurring bank indebtedness or trade liabilities in the ordinary course. In addition, the Company's Series A Preferred Stock and any future series of substantively similar preferred stock issued by the Company would not be deemed debt securities for purposes of the restrictions set forth in this subsection (i).

(j) *Reporting Requirements.* The Company will file all documents required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to the 1934 Act within the time periods required by the 1934 Act and the 1934 Act Regulations during the period when a Prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172, would be) required to be delivered under the 1933 Act. Additionally, the Company shall report the use of proceeds from the issuance of the Securities as may be required under Rule 463 under the 1933 Act.

(k) *Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses.* The Company agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Representative, it will not make any offer relating to the Securities that would constitute an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or that would otherwise constitute a "free writing prospectus," or a portion thereof, required to be filed by the Company with the Commission or retained by the Company under Rule 433; provided that the Representative will be deemed to have consented to the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses listed on Schedule II and any "road show that is a written communication" within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i) that has been reviewed by the Representative. The Company represents that it has treated or agrees that it will treat each such free writing prospectus consented to, or deemed consented to, by the Representative as an "issuer free writing prospectus," as defined in Rule 433, and that it has complied and will comply with the applicable requirements of Rule 433 with respect thereto, including timely filing with the Commission where required, legending and record keeping. If at any time following issuance of an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus conflicted or would conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package, any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus or included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representative and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus to eliminate or correct such conflict, untrue statement or omission.

(l) *Absence of Manipulation.* Except as contemplated herein or in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company will not take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that would constitute or that might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, stabilization or manipulation of the price of any securities of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Securities.

(m) *Transfer Agent.* The Company will maintain a transfer agent and, if required under the jurisdiction of formation of the Company, a registrar for its common shares.

(n) *Sarbanes-Oxley.* The Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to comply in all material respects with the applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

(o) *Notification of Material Events.* The Company, during the period when the Prospectus is (or but for the exemption in Rule 172 would be) required to be delivered under the 1933 Act or the 1934 Act, shall notify the Representative of the occurrence of any material events respecting its activities, affairs or condition, financial or otherwise, if, but only if, as a result of any such event it is necessary, in the opinion of counsel, to amend or supplement the Prospectus in order to make the Prospectus not misleading in the light of the circumstances existing at the time it is (or but for the exemption in Rule 172 would be) delivered to a purchaser, and the Company will forthwith supply such information as shall be necessary in the opinion of counsel to the Company and the Underwriters for the Company to prepare any necessary amendment or supplement to the Prospectus so that, as so amended or supplemented, the Prospectus will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at the time it is (or but for the exemption in Rule 172 would be) delivered to a purchaser, not misleading.

(p) *Testing-the-Waters Materials.* If at any time following the distribution of any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representative and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication to eliminate or correct such untrue statement or omission.

(q) *Emerging Growth Company.* The Company will promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the later of (i) completion of the distribution of the Securities within the meaning of the Securities Act and (ii) completion of the 90-day restricted period referred to in Section 3(i).

4. Payment of Expenses.

(a) *Expenses.* The Company will pay or cause to be paid all expenses incident to the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, including (i) the preparation, printing and filing of the Registration Statement (including financial statements and exhibits) as originally filed and each amendment thereto, (ii) the preparation, issuance and delivery of the certificates for the Securities to the Underwriters, including any stock, transfer or other taxes and any stamp or other duties payable upon the sale, issuance or delivery of the Securities to the Underwriters, (iii) the fees and disbursements of the Company's counsel, accountants and other advisors, (iv) the preparation, printing and delivery to the Underwriters of copies of each preliminary prospectus, each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto and any costs associated with electronic delivery of any of the foregoing by the Underwriters to investors, (v) the fees and expenses of any transfer agent or registrar for the Securities, (vi) the costs and expenses of the Company relating to investor presentations on any "road show" undertaken in connection with the marketing of the Securities, including without limitation, expenses associated with the production of road show slides and graphics, fees and expenses of any consultants engaged in connection with the road show presentations, travel and lodging expenses of the officers of the Company and any such consultants, and the cost of aircraft and other transportation chartered or owned by the Company or its affiliates and used in connection with the road show, (vii) the fees and disbursements incident to the review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Securities (including related fees and expenses of counsel to the Underwriters), (viii) fees and expenses of the Representative, including the fees and disbursements incident to the review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Securities and expenses of counsel to the Underwriters, up to \$100,000 in the aggregate, and (ix) the costs and expenses (including, without limitation, any damages or other amounts payable in connection with legal or contractual liability) associated with the reforming of any contracts for sale of the Securities made by the Underwriters caused by a breach of the representation contained in the third sentence of Section 1(a)(ii).

(b) *Underwriter Expenses.* Except to the extent otherwise provided in Section 4(a) or Section 4(c) hereof, the Underwriters will pay all of their own costs and expenses, including the fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters.

(c) *Termination of Agreement.* If this Agreement is terminated by the Representative in accordance with the provisions of Section 5(q) or Section 9(a)(i) or (iii) hereof, the Company shall reimburse the Underwriters for all of their out-of-pocket expenses, including the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters, up to \$100,000.

5. Conditions of Underwriters' Obligations. The respective obligations of the several Underwriters hereunder are subject to the accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein or in certificates of any officer of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries delivered pursuant to the provisions hereof, to the performance by the Company of its covenants and other obligations hereunder, and to each of the following additional terms and conditions:

(a) *Effectiveness of Registration Statement.* The Registration Statement, including any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, has become effective and at Closing Time no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment thereto has been issued under the 1933 Act, no order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued and no proceedings for any of those purposes have been instituted or are pending or, to the Company's knowledge, contemplated; and the Company has complied with each request (if any) from the Commission for additional information.

(b) *No Amendments or Supplements.* No prospectus or amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any preliminary prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus shall be filed to which the Underwriters shall have reasonably objected in writing.

(c) *Opinion of Counsel and Tax Counsel for the Company.* At the Closing Time, the Representative shall have received the favorable opinion and a 10b-5 “negative assurance” statement, dated as of the Closing Time, of Graubard Miller, counsel and tax counsel for the Company, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters, together with signed or reproduced copies of such letter for each of the other Underwriters.

(d) *Opinion of Counsel for Underwriters.* At Closing Time, the Representative shall have received the favorable opinion and 10b-5 statement, dated as of the Closing Time, of Blank Rome LLP, counsel for the Underwriters, together with signed or reproduced copies of such letter for each of the other Underwriters, with respect to such matters as the Underwriters may reasonably request.

(e) *Accountant’s Comfort Letter; Company Financial Information.* At the time of the execution of this Agreement, the Representative shall have received from the Auditor a letter, dated such date, in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative, together with signed or reproduced copies of such letter for each of the other Underwriters containing statements and information of the type ordinarily included in accountants’ “comfort letters” to underwriters with respect to the financial statements and certain financial information included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(f) *Bring-down Comfort Letter; Company Financial Information.* At the Closing Time, the Representative shall have received from the Auditor a letter, dated as of the Closing Time, to the effect that they reaffirm the statements made in the letter furnished pursuant to subsection (e) of this Section, except that the specified date referred to shall be a date not more than three business days prior to the Closing Time.

(g) *Officers’ Certificate.* At the Closing Time, there shall not have been, since the date hereof or since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, any Material Adverse Effect, and the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer of the Company, dated the Closing Time, to the effect set forth in Exhibit A-1 hereto.

(h) *Certificate of the Chief Financial Officer.* At the time of execution of this Agreement, the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer of the Company, dated as of such date, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters, to the effect set forth in Exhibit A-2. At the Closing Time, the Representative shall have received a certificate, dated as of the Closing Time, of the Chief Financial Officer and the Chief Accounting Officer of the Company confirming that the certificate delivered by the Company at the time of execution of this Agreement pursuant to the prior sentence of this Section 5(h) hereof remains true and correct as of the Closing Time.

(i) [reserved]

(j) *No Objection.* FINRA shall have confirmed that it has not raised any objection with respect to the fairness and reasonableness of the underwriting terms and arrangements relating to the offering of the Securities.

(k) [reserved]

(l) *Conditions to the Purchase of Option Securities.* In the event that the Underwriters exercise their option provided in Section 2(b) hereof to purchase all or any portion of the Option Securities, the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein and the statements in any certificates furnished by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries hereunder shall be true and correct as of each Date of Delivery and, at the relevant Date of Delivery, the Representative shall have received:

(i) Officers' Certificate. A certificate, dated such Date of Delivery, of the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer of the Company confirming that the certificate delivered at the Closing Time pursuant to Section 5(g) hereof remains true and correct as of such Date of Delivery.

(ii) Opinion of Counsel and Tax Counsel for Company. The favorable opinion and 10b-5 negative assurance statement of Graubard Miller, counsel and tax counsel for the Company, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters, dated such Date of Delivery, relating to the Option Securities to be purchased on such Date of Delivery and otherwise to the same effect as the opinion required by Section 5(c) hereof.

(iii) Opinion of Counsel for Underwriters. The favorable opinion and 10b-5 statement of Blank Rome LLP, counsel for the Underwriters, dated such Date of Delivery, relating to the Option Securities to be purchased on such Date of Delivery and otherwise to the same effect as the opinion required by Section 5(e) hereof.

(iv) Certificate of the Chief Financial Officer. A certificate of the Chief Financial Officer of the Company, dated such Date of Delivery, substantially in the same form and substance as the letter furnished to the Representative pursuant to Section 5(h) hereof.

(m) *Additional Documents.* At the Closing Time and at each Date of Delivery (if any) counsel for the Underwriters shall have been furnished with such documents and opinions as they may require for the purpose of enabling them to pass upon the issuance and sale of the Securities as herein contemplated, or in order to evidence the accuracy of any of the representations or warranties, or the fulfillment of any of the conditions, herein contained; and all proceedings taken by the Company in connection with the issuance and sale of the Securities as herein contemplated shall be reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Representative and counsel for the Underwriters.

(n) *Termination of Agreement.* If any condition specified in this Section shall not have been fulfilled when and as required to be fulfilled, this Agreement, or, in the case of any condition to the purchase of Option Securities on a Date of Delivery which is after the Closing Time, the obligations of the several Underwriters to purchase the relevant Option Securities, may be terminated by the Representative by notice to the Company at any time at or prior to Closing Time or such Date of Delivery, as the case may be, and such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except as provided in Section 4 and except that Sections 1, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 21 shall survive any such termination and remain in full force and effect.

6. Indemnification.

(a) *Indemnification of Underwriters.* The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each Underwriter, its affiliates (as such term is defined in Rule 501(b) under the 1933 Act (each, an “**Affiliate**”), its selling agents and each person, if any, who controls any Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act as follows:

(i) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including any information deemed to be a part thereof pursuant to Rule 430A, or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading or arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact included in (A) any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), or (B) in any materials or information provided to investors by, or with the approval of, the Company in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Securities (“**Marketing Materials**”), including any road show or investor presentation made to investors by the Company (whether in person or electronically), or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

(ii) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, to the extent of the aggregate amount paid in settlement of any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or of any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission; provided that (subject to Section 6(d) below) any such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Company;

(iii) against any and all expense whatsoever, as incurred (including the fees and disbursements of counsel chosen by the Representative), reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission, to the extent that any such expense is not paid under (i) or (ii) above;

provided, however, that this indemnity agreement shall not apply to any loss, liability, claim, damage or expense to the extent arising solely out of any untrue statement or omission made in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including any information deemed to be a part thereof pursuant to Rule 430A, any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with the Underwriter Information. The indemnity agreement set forth in this Section 6(a) shall be in addition to any liabilities that the Company may otherwise have.

(b) *Indemnification of Company, Directors and Officers.* Each Underwriter severally agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its directors, each of its officers who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the indemnity contained in subsection (a) of this Section, as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions made in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including any information deemed to be a part thereof pursuant to Rule 430A, any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with the Underwriter Information. The indemnity agreement set forth in this Section 6(b) shall be in addition to any other liabilities that each Underwriter may otherwise have.

(c) *Actions against Parties; Notification.* Each indemnified party shall give notice as promptly as reasonably practicable to each indemnifying party of any action (including any governmental investigation) commenced against it in respect of which indemnity may be sought hereunder, but failure to so notify an indemnifying party shall not relieve such indemnifying party from any liability hereunder to the extent it is not materially prejudiced as a result thereof and in any event shall not relieve it from any liability which it may have otherwise than on account of this indemnity agreement. The indemnifying party shall be entitled, to the extent that it shall elect, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense of such action, with counsel satisfactory to the indemnified party, to represent the indemnified party and any others the indemnifying party may designate in such proceeding and shall pay the fees and disbursements of such counsel related to such proceeding. In any such proceeding, any indemnified party shall have the right to retain its own counsel, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such indemnified party unless (i) the indemnifying party and the indemnified party shall have mutually agreed to the retention of such counsel, (ii) the indemnifying party has failed within a reasonable time to retain counsel satisfactory to the indemnified party, (iii) the indemnified party shall have reasonably concluded that there may be legal defenses available to it that are different from or in addition to those available to the indemnifying party, or (iv) the named parties to any such proceeding (including any impleaded parties) include both the indemnifying party and the indemnified party and representation of both parties by the same counsel would be inappropriate due to actual or potential differing interests between them, and in any such event the reasonable fees and expenses of separate counsel (and any additional local counsels) shall be paid by the indemnifying party. If the indemnifying party does not elect to assume the defense, then such firm shall be designated in writing by the Representative, in the case of parties indemnified pursuant to Section 6(a), and by the Company in the case of parties indemnified pursuant to Section 6(b). No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified parties, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment with respect to any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever in respect of which indemnification or contribution could be sought under this Section 6 or Section 7 hereof (whether or not the indemnified parties are actual or potential parties thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent (i) includes an unconditional release of each indemnified party from all liability arising out of such litigation, investigation, proceeding or claim and (ii) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

(d) *Settlement without Consent if Failure to Reimburse.* If at any time an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel, such indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of the nature contemplated by Section 6(a)(ii) effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 45 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (ii) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 30 days prior to such settlement being entered into and (iii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed such indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement.

7. Contribution. If the indemnification provided for in Section 6 hereof is for any reason unavailable to or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party in respect of any losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses referred to therein, then each indemnifying party shall contribute to the aggregate amount of such losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses incurred by such indemnified party, as incurred, (i) in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, from the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in clause (i) above but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and of the Underwriters, on the other hand, in connection with the statements or omissions, that resulted in such losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations.

The relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, in connection with the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement shall be deemed to be in the same respective proportions as the total net proceeds from the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement (before deducting expenses) received by the Company, on the one hand, and the total underwriting discount received by the Underwriters, on the other hand, in each case as set forth on the cover of the Prospectus, bear to the aggregate initial public offering price of the Securities as set forth on the cover of the Prospectus.

The relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any such untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or by the Underwriters and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission.

The Company and the Underwriters agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this Section 7 were determined by pro rata allocation (even if the Underwriters were treated as one entity for such purpose) or by any other method of allocation which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to above in this Section 7. The aggregate amount of losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses incurred by an indemnified party and referred to above in this Section 7 shall be deemed to include any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission.

Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 7, no Underwriter shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total price at which the Securities underwritten by it and distributed to the public were offered to the public exceeds the amount of any damages which such Underwriter has otherwise been required to pay by reason of any such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission.

No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the 1933 Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

For purposes of this Section 7, each person, if any, who controls an Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act and each Underwriter's Affiliates and selling agents shall have the same rights to contribution as such Underwriter, and each director of the Company, each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act shall have the same rights to contribution as the Company, subject in each case to the preceding two paragraphs. The Underwriters' respective obligations to contribute pursuant to this Section 7 are several in proportion to the number of Initial Securities set forth opposite their respective names in Schedule I and not joint.

8. Representations, Warranties and Agreements to Survive. All representations, warranties and agreements contained in this Agreement or in certificates of officers of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries submitted pursuant hereto, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of (i) any investigation made by or on behalf of any Underwriter or its Affiliates or selling agents, any person controlling any Underwriter, its officers or directors, any person controlling the Company and (ii) delivery of and payment for the Securities.

9. Termination of Agreement.

The Representative may terminate this Agreement, by notice to the Company, at any time at or prior to the Closing Time (i) if there has been, in the judgment of the Representative, since the time of execution of this Agreement or since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, any Material Adverse Effect, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, or (ii) if there has occurred any material adverse change in the financial markets in the United States or the international financial markets, any outbreak of hostilities or escalation thereof or other calamity or crisis or any change or development involving a prospective change in national or international political, financial or economic conditions, in each case the effect of which is such as to make it, in the judgment of the Representative, impracticable or inadvisable to market the Securities or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Securities, or (iii) if trading in any equity securities of the Company has been suspended or materially limited by the Commission or the Nasdaq Global Market, or (iv) if trading generally in the Nasdaq Stock Market or on the New York Stock Exchange or NYSE American or has been suspended or materially limited, or minimum or maximum prices for trading have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices have been required, by any of said exchanges or by order of the Commission, FINRA or any other governmental authority, or (v) a material disruption has occurred in commercial banking or securities settlement or clearance services in the United States or with respect to Clearstream or Euroclear systems in Europe, or (vi) if a banking moratorium has been declared by either federal or state authorities.

10. Default by One or More of the Underwriters. If one or more of the Underwriters shall fail at Closing Time or a Date of Delivery to purchase the Securities which it or they are obligated to purchase under this Agreement (the “**Defaulted Securities**”), the Representative shall have the right, within 24 hours thereafter, to make arrangements for one or more of the non-defaulting Underwriters, or any other underwriters, to purchase all, but not less than all, of the Defaulted Securities in such amounts as may be agreed upon and upon the terms herein set forth; if, however, the Representative shall not have completed such arrangements within such 24-hour period, then:

(i) if the principal amount of Defaulted Securities does not exceed 10% of the principal amount of Securities to be purchased on such date, each of the non-defaulting Underwriters shall be obligated, severally and not jointly, to purchase the full amount thereof in the proportions that their respective underwriting obligations hereunder bear to the underwriting obligations of all non-defaulting Underwriters, or

(ii) if the principal amount of Defaulted Securities exceeds 10% of the principal amount of Securities to be purchased on such date, this Agreement or, with respect to any Date of Delivery which occurs after the Closing Time, the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase, and the Company to sell, the Option Securities to be purchased and sold on such Date of Delivery shall terminate without liability on the part of any non-defaulting Underwriter.

No action taken pursuant to this Section shall relieve any defaulting Underwriter from liability in respect of its default.

In the event of any such default which does not result in a termination of this Agreement or, in the case of a Date of Delivery which is after the Closing Time, which does not result in a termination of the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase and the Company to sell the relevant Option Securities, as the case may be, either the (i) Representative or (ii) the Company shall have the right to postpone Closing Time or the relevant Date of Delivery, as the case may be, for a period not exceeding seven days in order to effect any required changes in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or in any other documents or arrangements. As used herein, the term "Underwriter" includes any person substituted for an Underwriter under this Section 10.

Notices. All notices and other communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if mailed or transmitted by any standard form of telecommunication. Notices to the Underwriters shall be directed to the Representative at Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc., 277 Park Avenue, 26th Floor, New York, New York 10172, Attention: Steven Kaplan (email: []), with a copy to Blank Rome LLP, 1271 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10020, Attention: Brad L. Shiffman. (email: bshiffman@blankrome.com); notices to the Company shall be directed to them at Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., 123 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W, Cos Cob, CT 06807, Attention: William J. Rouhana, Jr. (email: wrouhana@chickensoupforthesoul.com); and with a copy to Graubard Miller, 405 Lexington Avenue, New York, NY 10174 , Attention: David Alan Miller and Brian L. Ross (email: dmiller@graubard.com; or bross@graubard.com).

11. Research Analyst Independence. The Company acknowledges that the Underwriters' research analysts and research departments are required to be independent from their respective investment banking divisions and are subject to certain regulations and internal policies, and that such Underwriters' research analysts may hold views and make statements or investment recommendations and/or publish research reports with respect to the Company and/or the offering that differ from the views of their respective investment banking divisions. The Company hereby waives and releases, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims that the Company may have against the Underwriters with respect to any conflict of interest that may arise from the fact that the views expressed by their independent research analysts and research departments may be different from or inconsistent with the views or advice communicated to the Company by such Underwriters' investment banking divisions. The Company acknowledges that each of the Underwriters is a full service securities firm and as such from time to time, subject to applicable securities laws, may effect transactions for its own account or the account of its customers and hold long or short positions in debt or equity securities of the companies that may be the subject of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

12. No Advisory or Fiduciary Relationship. The Company and its Subsidiaries acknowledge and agree that (a) the purchase and sale of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement, including the determination of the initial public offering price of the Securities and any related discounts and commissions, is an arm's-length commercial transaction between the Company and its Subsidiaries, on the one hand, and the several Underwriters, on the other hand, (b) in connection with the offering of the Securities and the process leading thereto, each Underwriter is and has been acting solely as a principal and is not the agent or fiduciary of the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or their respective stockholders, equity interest holders, creditors, employees or any other party, (c) no Underwriter has assumed or will assume an advisory or fiduciary responsibility in favor of the Company or its Subsidiaries with respect to the offering of the Securities or the process leading thereto (irrespective of whether such Underwriter has advised or is currently advising the Company or any of its Subsidiaries on other matters) and no Underwriter has any obligation to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries with respect to the offering of the Securities except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement, (d) the Underwriters and their respective affiliates may be engaged in a broad range of transactions that involve interests that differ from those of each of the Company and its Subsidiaries, and (e) none of the Underwriters or legal counsel for the Underwriters has provided any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice to the Company or its Subsidiaries with respect to the offering of the Securities and the Company and its Subsidiaries have consulted their own respective legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent they deemed appropriate.

13. Parties. This Agreement shall each inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the Underwriters, the Company and their respective successors. Nothing expressed or mentioned in this Agreement is intended or shall be construed to give any person, firm or corporation, other than the Underwriters, the Company and their respective successors and the controlling persons and officers and directors referred to in Sections 6 and 7 and their heirs and legal representatives, any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement or any provision herein contained. This Agreement and all conditions and provisions hereof are intended to be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the Underwriters, the Company and their respective successors, and said controlling persons and officers and directors and their heirs and legal representatives, and for the benefit of no other person, firm or corporation. No purchaser of Securities from any Underwriter shall be deemed to be a successor by reason merely of such purchase.

14. Trial by Jury. The Company (on its behalf and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, on behalf of its stockholders and affiliates) and each of the Underwriters hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, any and all right to trial by jury in any legal proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby.

15. Consent to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunity. Any legal suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby ("**Related Proceedings**") shall be instituted in (i) the federal courts of the United States of America located in the City and County of New York, Borough of Manhattan or (ii) the courts of the State of New York located in the City and County of New York, Borough of Manhattan (collectively, the "**Specified Courts**"), and each party hereto irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction (except for proceedings instituted in regard to the enforcement of a judgment of any such court (a "**Related Judgment**"), as to which such jurisdiction is non-exclusive) of such courts in any such suit, action or proceeding. Service of any process, summons, notice or document by mail to such party's address set forth above shall be effective service of process for any suit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court. The parties irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any suit, action or other proceeding in the Specified Courts and irrevocably and unconditionally waive and agree not to plead or claim in any such court that any such suit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

16. GOVERNING LAW. THIS AGREEMENT AND ANY CLAIM, CONTROVERSY OR DISPUTE ARISING UNDER OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF, THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT REGARD TO ITS CHOICE OF LAW PROVISIONS.

17. TIME. TIME SHALL BE OF THE ESSENCE OF THIS AGREEMENT. EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE SET FORTH HEREIN, SPECIFIED TIMES OF DAY REFER TO NEW YORK CITY TIME.

18. Partial Unenforceability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any Section, paragraph or provision of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other Section, paragraph or provision hereof. If any Section, paragraph or provision of this Agreement is for any reason determined to be invalid or unenforceable, there shall be deemed to be made such minor changes (and only such minor changes) as are necessary to make it valid and enforceable.

19. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute one and the same Agreement.

20. Effect of Headings. The Section headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

[Signature page follows]

If the foregoing is in accordance with your understanding of our agreement, please sign and return to the Company a counterpart hereof, whereupon this instrument, along with all counterparts, will become a binding agreement among the Underwriters and the Company in accordance with its terms.

Very truly yours,

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Accepted:

LADENBURG THALMANN & CO. INC.

For itself and as Representative
of the several Underwriters named
in Schedule I

By: _____
Authorized Representative

[Signature Page to Underwriting Agreement]

SCHEDULE I

The initial public offering price per Note shall be \$25.00.

The purchase price per Note for the Securities to be paid by the several Underwriters shall be \$23.75, being an amount equal to the initial public offering price set forth above less \$1.25 per Indenture, subject to adjustment in accordance with Section 2(b) for interest payable on the Initial Securities but not payable on the Option Securities.

	Principal Amount of Initial Securities
Underwriters	
Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.	\$ []
Total	<u>\$ []</u>

SCHEDULE II

ORALLY CONVEYED PRICING INFORMATION

1. The Company is selling \$[] principal amount of Notes.
2. The Company has granted an option to the Underwriters, severally and not jointly, to purchase up to an additional \$[] principal amount of Notes.
3. The public offering price per Note is \$25.00.

FREE WRITING PROSPECTUS

None.

CERTIFICATE OF THE COMPANY

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE

[*], 2020

The undersigned, the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), pursuant to Section 5(h) of the Underwriting Agreement, dated as of [*], 2020 (the "**Underwriting Agreement**"), by and among the Company and Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc., as representative of the several underwriters listed in Schedule I thereto (collectively, the "**Underwriters**"), providing for the sale by the Company to the Underwriters of (i) \$[*] principal amount of [*]% Notes due 2025 (the "Notes"), of the Company and (ii) up to an additional \$[*] principal amount of Notes, hereby certify that they are authorized to execute this Officers' Certificate in the name and on behalf of the Company. Each of the undersigned also hereby certifies that:

- (i) the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 1(a) of the Underwriting Agreement are true and correct with the same force and effect as though expressly made as of the date hereof;
- (ii) the Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied under the Underwriting Agreement at or prior to the date hereof;
- (iii) no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, has been issued, no order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued and no proceedings for any of those purposes have been instituted or are pending or, to their knowledge, contemplated; and
- (iv) there has not been, since the date of the Underwriting Agreement or since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, any Material Adverse Effect.

Each of Graubard Miller, counsel to the Company, and Blank Rome LLP, counsel to the Underwriters, is entitled to rely upon this Officers' Certificate in connection with the respective opinions given by such firms pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement.

Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to such terms in the Underwriting Agreement.

[Signature page follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, we have hereunto set our hands as of the date first written above.

By: _____
Name: William J. Rouhana, Jr.
Title: Chief Executive Officer

By: _____
Name: Christopher M. Mitchell
Title: Chief Financial Officer

CERTIFICATE OF THE CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

[*], 2020

Pursuant to Section 5(i) of the Underwriting Agreement, dated [*], 2020 (the “**Underwriting Agreement**”), by and among Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc., as representative of the several underwriters listed in Schedule I thereto (collectively, the “**Underwriters**”), on the other hand, the undersigned, Christopher M. Mitchell, the Chief Financial Officer of the Company, hereby certifies that:

1. As the Company’s Chief Financial Officer, (A) I am responsible for the Company’s accounting and financial matters, (B) I am familiar with the Company’s internal accounting records and all of the audited and unaudited financial statements, including any pro forma financial statements, that are included in the preliminary prospectus, dated [*], 2020 (the “**Preliminary Prospectus**”), and (C) I am familiar with and responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in 1934 Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in 1934 Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)).
2. I have been actively involved in the preparation of the financial data included in the Company’s Preliminary Prospectus Supplement.
3. I certify that since the preparation of the financial statements for the period ended March 31, 2020, (a) there has been no change in the internal control over financial reporting of the Company that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the internal control over financial reporting of the Company and (b) the Company has not changed in any material respect any of its principal accounting policies.
4. I have supervised the compilation of the pro forma financial statements and the related notes thereto included in the Preliminary Prospectus and certify that such pro forma financial statements and related notes present fairly in all material respects the information shown therein, have been prepared in accordance with the rules and guidelines of the Securities and Exchange Commission with respect to pro forma financial statements and have been properly compiled on the bases described therein, and the assumptions used in the preparation thereof are reasonable and the adjustments used therein are appropriate to give effect to the transactions and circumstances referred to therein.
5. I have reviewed the information circled on Exhibit A hereto (the “**Circled Information**”), which information is included in the Preliminary Prospectus. As of the Applicable Time and subject to the information included on Schedule III to the Underwriting Agreement, the Circled Information: (i) has been derived from the financial and accounting records of the Company and its Subsidiaries (or schedules prepared by the Company’s management therefrom) and is true, accurate and correct in all material respects; and/or (ii) has been derived from the internal records or schedules of the Company and its Subsidiaries and is true, accurate and correct in all material respects, in each case, as applicable.

6. Since the Applicable Time and subject to the information included on Schedule III to the Underwriting Agreement, nothing has come to our attention that caused us to believe that the Circlled Information, as of the Applicable Time, was not true, correct and accurate, in each case in all material respects.

Unless otherwise defined herein, capitalized terms used in this Certificate shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Underwriting Agreement.

This Certificate is to assist the Underwriters and their counsel in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the Company in connection with the offer and sale of the Securities. Each of Graubard Miller, counsel to the Company, and Blank Rome LLP, counsel to the Underwriters, is entitled to rely upon this Certificate in connection with the respective opinions given by such firms pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement.

[Signature Page Follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, we have hereunto set our hands as of the date first written above.

By: _____
Name: Christopher M. Mitchell
Title: Chief Financial Officer

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

Issuer

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

Trustee

Indenture

Dated as of [], 2020

Providing for the Issuance

Of

Debt Securities

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.
Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939
and Indenture, dated as of [], 2020

Trust Indenture Act Section	Indenture Section
§ 310 (a)(1)	607
(a)(2)	607
(b)	609
§ 312 (c)	701
§ 314 (a)	704
(a)(4)	1005
(c)(1)	102
(c)(2)	102
(e)	102
§ 315 (b)	601
§ 316 (a) (last sentence)	101 (“Outstanding”)
(a)(1)(A)	502,512
(a)(1)(B)	513
(b)	508
§ 317 (a)(1)	503
(a)(2)	504
§ 318 (a)	111
(c)	111

NOTE: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	
SECTION 101. Definitions	1
SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions	8
SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	9
SECTION 104. Acts of Holders	9
SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	10
SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver	10
SECTION 107. Conflict with TIA	11
SECTION 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	11
SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns	11
SECTION 110. Separability Clause	11
SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture	11
SECTION 112. Governing Law	11
SECTION 113. Legal Holidays	11
SECTION 114. Submission to Jurisdiction	12
ARTICLE TWO SECURITIES FORMS	12
SECTION 201. Forms of Securities	12
SECTION 202. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	12
SECTION 203. Securities Issuable in Global Form	12
ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES	13
SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	13
SECTION 302. Denominations	16
SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	16
SECTION 304. Temporary Securities	17
SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	18
SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	20
SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset	20
SECTION 308. Optional Extension of Maturity	22
SECTION 309. Persons Deemed Owners	23
SECTION 310. Cancellation	23
SECTION 311. Computation of Interest	23
SECTION 312. Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities	23
SECTION 313. Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent	26
SECTION 314. CUSIP and ISIN Numbers	26
ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	26
SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	26
SECTION 402. Application of Trust Funds	27
ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES	28
SECTION 501. Events of Default	28
SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	29
SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	30
SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	30
SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	31
SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected	31

SECTION 507.	Limitation on Suits	31
SECTION 508.	Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	32
SECTION 509.	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	32
SECTION 510.	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	32
SECTION 511.	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	32
SECTION 512.	Control by Holders of Securities	32
SECTION 513.	Waiver of Past Defaults	33
SECTION 514.	Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	33
ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE		33
SECTION 601.	Notice of Defaults	33
SECTION 602.	Certain Rights and Duties of Trustee	33
SECTION 603.	Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	36
SECTION 604.	May Hold Securities	36
SECTION 605.	Money Held in Trust	36
SECTION 606.	Compensation and Reimbursement and Indemnification of Trustee	36
SECTION 607.	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	37
SECTION 608.	Disqualification; Conflicting Interests	37
SECTION 609.	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	37
SECTION 610.	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	38
SECTION 611.	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	39
SECTION 612.	Appointment of Authenticating Agent	40
ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY		41
SECTION 701.	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	41
SECTION 702.	Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	41
SECTION 703.	Reports by Trustee	41
SECTION 704.	Reports by Company	42
SECTION 705.	Calculation of Original Issue Discount	42
ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER		42
SECTION 801.	Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	42
SECTION 802.	Successor Person Substituted	43
ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		43
SECTION 901.	Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	43
SECTION 902.	Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders	44
SECTION 903.	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	45
SECTION 904.	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	45
SECTION 905.	Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	45
SECTION 906.	Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	45
ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS		45
SECTION 1001.	Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest	45
SECTION 1002.	Maintenance of Office or Agency	46
SECTION 1003.	Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust	46
SECTION 1004.	Additional Amounts	47
SECTION 1005.	Statement as to Compliance	47
SECTION 1006.	Payment of Taxes and Other Claims	48
SECTION 1007.	Waiver of Certain Covenants	48
SECTION 1008.	FATCA	48

ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	49
SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article	49
SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	49
SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed	49
SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption	49
SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price	50
SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date	50
SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part	51
ARTICLE TWELVE SINKING FUNDS	51
SECTION 1201. Applicability of Article	51
SECTION 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	51
SECTION 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	52
ARTICLE THIRTEEN REPAYMENT AT THE OPTION OF HOLDERS	52
SECTION 1301. Applicability of Article	52
SECTION 1302. Repayment of Securities	52
SECTION 1303. Exercise of Option	52
SECTION 1304. When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable	53
SECTION 1305. Securities Repaid in Part	53
ARTICLE FOURTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE	53
SECTION 1401. Applicability of Article; Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	53
SECTION 1402. Defeasance and Discharge	53
SECTION 1403. Covenant Defeasance	54
SECTION 1404. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	54
SECTION 1405. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	55
ARTICLE FIFTEEN MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES	56
SECTION 1501. Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	56
SECTION 1502. Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	56
SECTION 1503. Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	56
SECTION 1504. Quorum; Action	57
SECTION 1505. Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	57
SECTION 1506. Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	58
ARTICLE SIXTEEN SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES	58
SECTION 1601. Agreement to Subordinate	58
SECTION 1602. Distribution on Dissolution, Liquidation and Reorganization; Subrogation of Subordinated Securities	58
SECTION 1603. No Payment on Subordinated Securities in Event of Default on Senior Indebtedness	60
SECTION 1604. Payments on Subordinated Securities Permitted	60
SECTION 1605. Authorization of Holders to Trustee to Effect Subordination	60
SECTION 1606. Notices to Trustee	60
SECTION 1607. Trustee as Holder of Senior Indebtedness	61
SECTION 1608. Modifications of Terms of Senior Indebtedness	61
SECTION 1609. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent	61

INDENTURE, dated as of [], 2020, between CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC., a Delaware corporation (hereinafter called the “Company”), having its principal office at 132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W, Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807, and U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Trustee (hereinafter called the “Trustee”), having its office at One Federal Street, 10th Floor, Boston, MA 01220.

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company deems it necessary to issue from time to time for its lawful purposes debt securities (hereinafter called the “Securities”) evidencing its secured or unsecured indebtedness, which may or may not be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (as defined herein) (including the Company), and has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of the Securities, to be issued in one or more series, unlimited as to principal amount, to bear such rates of interest, to mature at such times and to have such other provisions as shall be fixed as hereinafter provided.

This Indenture (as defined herein) is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid and legally binding agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders (as defined herein) thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities, or of a series thereof, as follows:

ARTICLE ONE

DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

SECTION 101. Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular and, pursuant to Section 301, any such item may, with respect to any particular series of Securities, be amended or modified or specified as being inapplicable;
- (2) all other terms used herein that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act (as defined herein), either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein, and the terms “cash transaction” and “self-liquidating paper”, as used in Section 311 of the Trust Indenture Act, shall have the meanings assigned to them in the rules of the Commission (as defined herein) adopted under the Trust Indenture Act;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America; and
- (4) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used in other Articles herein, are defined in those Articles.

“Act”, when used with respect to any Holder of a Security, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Additional Amounts” means any additional amounts that are required by a Security or by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, under circumstances specified therein, to be paid by the Company in respect of certain taxes imposed on certain Holders or beneficial owners and that are owing to such Holders or beneficial owners.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any authenticating agent appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 612 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company, the executive committee or any committee of that board duly authorized to act hereunder.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day”, when used with respect to any Place of Payment or any other particular location referred to in this Indenture or in the Securities, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday that is not a day on which banking institutions in New York, New York, United States or in the applicable Place of Payment or particular location are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Code” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties on such date.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Corporation.

“Company Request” and “Company Order” mean, respectively, a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by the Chief Executive Officer, President or a Vice President of the Company, and by the Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer, Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(d).

“Conversion Event” means the cessation of use of (i) a Foreign Currency both by the government of the country which issued such currency and for the settlement of transactions by a central bank or other public institutions of or within the international banking community, (ii) the Euro within the Economic and Monetary Union of the European Union or (iii) any currency unit (or composite currency) other than the Euro for the purposes for which it was established.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any time its corporate trust business shall be administered, which office at the date hereof for purposes of Section 1002 only is located at 111 Fillmore Avenue, St. Paul, MN 55107, Attention: Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., and for all other purposes is located at One Federal Street, 10th Floor, Boston, MA 02110, Attention: Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company).

“Corporation” includes corporations, associations, companies and business trusts.

“Currency” means any currency or currencies, composite currency or currency unit or currency units issued by the government of one or more countries or by any reorganized confederation or association of such governments.

“Default” means any event that is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Depository” means the clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as the Depository for global Securities. DTC shall be the initial Depository, until a successor shall have been appointed and become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter, “Depository” shall mean or include such successor.

“Dollar” or “\$” means a dollar or other equivalent unit in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time shall be legal tender for the payment of public and private debts.

“DTC” means The Depository Trust Company.

“Euro” means the euro or other equivalent unit in such official coin or currency of the European Union.

“Election Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(h).

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Article Five.

“Exchange Act” mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as in force on the date which this Indenture is executed and delivered.

“Exchange Rate Agent”, with respect to Securities of or within any series, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, a bank that is a member of the New York Clearing House Association, designated pursuant to Section 301 or Section 313.

“Exchange Rate Officer’s Certificate” means a certificate setting forth (i) the applicable Market Exchange Rate or the applicable bid quotation and (ii) the Dollar or Foreign Currency amounts of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any (on an aggregate basis and on the basis of a Security having the lowest denomination principal amount determined in accordance with Section 302 in the relevant Currency), payable with respect to a Security of any series on the basis of such Market Exchange Rate or the applicable bid quotation signed by the Chief Financial Officer or any Vice President of the Company.

“FATCA” means Sections 1471, 1472, 1473 or 1474 of the Code and the United States Treasury Regulations or published guidance with respect thereto.

“Foreign Currency” means any Currency, including, without limitation, the Euro issued by the government of one or more countries other than the United States of America or by any recognized confederation or association of such governments.

“GAAP” means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States set forth in the opinions and pronouncements of the Accounting Principles Board of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the opinions and pronouncements of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board and the statements and pronouncements of the Financial Accounting Standards Board or in such other statements by such other entity as have been approved by a significant segment of the accounting profession in the United States, which are in effect from time to time.

“Government Obligations” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America or the government that issued the Foreign Currency in which the Securities of a particular series are payable, for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America or such government that issued the Foreign Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, the timely payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America or such other government, which, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest on or principal of the Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“Holder” means the Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 301; provided, however, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of the or those particular series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established as contemplated by Section 301, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms that relate solely to other series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted, and exclusive of any provisions or terms adopted by means of one or more indentures supplemental hereto executed and delivered after such Person had become such Trustee but to which such Person, as such Trustee, was not a party.

“Indexed Security” means a Security as to which all or certain interest payments and/or the principal amount payable at Maturity are determined by reference to prices, changes in prices, or differences between prices, of securities, Currencies, intangibles, goods, articles or commodities or by such other objective price, economic or other measures as are specified in or pursuant to Section 301 hereof.

“Interest”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity, and, when used with respect to a Security which provides for the payment of Additional Amounts pursuant to Section 1004, includes such Additional Amounts.

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Market Exchange Rate” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, (i) for any conversion involving a currency unit on the one hand and Dollars or any Foreign Currency on the other, the exchange rate between the relevant currency unit and Dollars or such Foreign Currency calculated by the method specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of the relevant series, (ii) for any conversion of Dollars into any Foreign Currency, the noon buying rate for such Foreign Currency for cable transfers quoted in New York City as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and (iii) for any conversion of one Foreign Currency into Dollars or another Foreign Currency, the spot rate at noon local time in the relevant market at which, in accordance with normal banking procedures, the Dollars or Foreign Currency into which conversion is being made could be purchased with the Foreign Currency from which conversion is being made from major banks located in either New York City, London or any other principal market for Dollars or such purchased Foreign Currency, in each case determined by the Exchange Rate Agent. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, in the event of the unavailability of any of the exchange rates provided for in the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the Exchange Rate Agent shall use, in its sole discretion and without liability on its part, such quotation of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as of the most recent available date, or quotations from one or more major banks in New York City, London or other principal market for such currency or currency unit in question, or such other quotations as the Exchange Rate Agent shall deem appropriate. Unless otherwise specified by the Exchange Rate Agent, if there is more than one market for dealing in any currency or currency unit by reason of foreign exchange regulations or otherwise, the market to be used in respect of such currency or currency unit shall be that upon which a nonresident issuer of securities designated in such currency or currency unit would purchase such currency or currency unit in order to make payments in respect of such securities as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent, in its sole discretion.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, notice of redemption, notice of option to elect repayment, notice of exchange or conversion or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” has the meaning provided in Section 501.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chief Executive Officer, President or a Vice President of the Company, and by the Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer, Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company or who may be an employee of or other counsel for the Company and who shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security that provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to Securities or any series of Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities or all Securities of such series, as the case may be, theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for whose payment or redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities, provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (iii) Securities, except to the extent provided in Sections 1402 and 1403, with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance and/or covenant defeasance as provided in Article Fourteen;
- (iv) Securities that have been changed into any other securities of the Company or any other Person in accordance with this Indenture if the terms of such Securities provide for convertibility or exchangeability pursuant to Section 301; and

(v) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a protected purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders for quorum purposes, and for the purpose of making the calculations required by TIA Section 313, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the amount of principal thereof that would be (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable, at the time of such determination, upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, (ii) the principal amount of any Security denominated in a Foreign Currency that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the Dollar equivalent, determined as of the date such Security is originally issued by the Company as set forth in an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustee, of the principal amount (or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security or Indexed Security, the Dollar equivalent as of such date of original issuance of the amount determined as provided in clause (i) above or (iii) below, respectively) of such Security, (iii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 301, and (iv) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in making such calculation or in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver or upon any such determination as to the presence of a quorum, only Securities which a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

"Paying Agent" means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

"Person" means any individual, Corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, limited liability company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof, or any other entity.

"Place of Payment", when used with respect to the Securities of or within any series, means the place or places where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities are payable as specified and as contemplated by Sections 301 and 1002.

"Predecessor Security" of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

"Redemption Date", when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

"Redemption Price", when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

"Registered Security" means any Security that is registered in the Security Register.

"Regular Record Date" for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Registered Securities of or within any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 301, whether or not a Business Day.

“Repayment Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, means the date fixed for such repayment by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Repayment Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, means the price at which it is to be repaid by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee assigned by the Trustee to administer its corporate trust matters and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“Security” or “Securities” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and, more particularly, means any Security or Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; provided, however, that, if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“Security Register” and “Security Registrar” have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

“Senior Indebtedness” means the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on (a) indebtedness of the Company (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by the Company), whether outstanding on the date hereof or thereafter created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, that has been designated by the Company as “Senior Indebtedness” for purposes of this Indenture by a Company Order delivered to the Trustee, (b) Senior Securities, and (c) renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any such indebtedness.

“Senior Security” or “Senior Securities” means any Security or Securities designated pursuant to Section 301 as a Senior Security.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of or within any series means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 307.

“Stated Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable, as such date may be extended pursuant to the provisions of Section 308.

“Subordinated Indebtedness” means the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on (a) indebtedness of the Company (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by the Company), whether outstanding on the date hereof or thereafter created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, which in the instrument creating or evidencing the same or pursuant to which the same is outstanding it is provided that such indebtedness ranks junior in right of payment to the Company’s Senior Indebtedness, equally and *pari passu* in right of payment with all other Subordinated Indebtedness, (b) Subordinated Securities, and (c) renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any such Subordinated Indebtedness.

“Subordinated Security” or “Subordinated Securities” means any Security or Securities designated pursuant to Section 301 as a Subordinated Security.

“Subsidiary” means (1) any Corporation a majority of the outstanding voting stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries of the Company, (2) any other Person (other than a Corporation) in which such Person, one or more Subsidiaries of such Person, or such Person and one or more Subsidiaries of such Person, directly or indirectly, at the date of determination thereof has a majority ownership interest, or (3) a partnership in which such Person or a Subsidiary of such Person is, at the time, a general partner and in which such Person, directly or indirectly, at the date of determination thereof has a majority ownership interest. For the purposes of this definition, “voting stock” means stock having voting power for the election of directors, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of stock has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was executed, except as provided in Section 905.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“United States” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction.

“United States person” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, any individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States, a Corporation, partnership or other entity created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia (other than a partnership that is not treated as a United States person under any applicable Treasury regulations), any estate the income of which is subject to United States federal income taxation regardless of its source, or any trust if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, to the extent provided in the Treasury regulations, certain trusts in existence on August 20, 1996, and treated as United States persons prior to such date that elect to continue to be treated as United States persons, will also be United States persons.

“Valuation Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(c).

“Yield to Maturity” means the yield to maturity, computed at the time of issuance of a Security (or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such Security) and as set forth in such Security in accordance with generally accepted United States bond yield computation principles.

SECTION 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than pursuant to Section 1005) shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such condition or covenant and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he or she has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable such individual to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such condition or covenant has been complied with; and

- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion as to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, or a certificate or representations by counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the opinion, certificate or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such Opinion of Counsel or certificate or representations may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information as to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations as to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

SECTION 104. Acts of Holders.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of the Outstanding Securities of all series or one or more series, as the case may be, may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agents duly appointed in writing. Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series may, alternatively, be embodied in and evidenced by the record of Holders of Securities of such series voting in favor thereof, either in person or by proxies duly appointed in writing, at any meeting of Holders of Securities of such series duly called and held in accordance with the provisions of Article Fifteen, or a combination of such instruments and any such record. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company and any agent of the Trustee or the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in Section 1506.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him or her the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing or the authority of the Person executing the same may also be proved in any other reasonable manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

- (c) The ownership of Registered Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of Registered Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may, at its option, in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Such record date shall be the record date specified in or pursuant to such Board Resolution, which shall be a date not earlier than the date 30 days prior to the first solicitation of Holders generally in connection therewith and not later than the date such solicitation is completed. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on such record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than eleven months after the record date.

(e) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent, any Authenticating Agent or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

SECTION 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.

(A) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished, filed or mailed, first-class postage prepaid in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. (Karen R. Beard, Vice President), or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Company by the Trustee, or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this Indenture, to the attention of its Secretary or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

(B) All notices, approvals, consents, requests and any communications hereunder or with respect to the Securities must be in writing (provided that any communication sent to Trustee hereunder must be in the form of a document that is signed manually or by way of a digital signature provided by DocuSign (or such other digital signature provider as specified in writing to Trustee by the authorized representative), in English. Company agrees to assume all risks arising out of the use of using digital signatures and electronic methods to submit communications to Trustee, including without limitation the risk of Trustee acting on unauthorized instructions, and the risk of interception and misuse by third parties.

SECTION 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities by the Company or the Trustee, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each such Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders of Registered Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Registered Securities. Any notice mailed to a Holder in the manner herein prescribed shall be conclusively deemed to have been received by such Holder, whether or not such Holder actually receives such notice.

If by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification to Holders of Registered Securities as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification to such Holders for every purpose hereunder.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

SECTION 107. Conflict with TIA.

If any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the TIA that is required under the TIA to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the provision of the TIA shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the TIA that may be so modified or excluded, the provision of the TIA shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or only to the extent not so excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

SECTION 109. Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 110. Separability Clause.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in any Security shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

SECTION 111. Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent, any Authenticating Agent and their successors hereunder and the Holders any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

SECTION 112. Governing Law.

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York without regard to principles of conflicts of laws. This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

SECTION 113. Legal Holidays.

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security other than a provision in the Securities of any series which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section), payment of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date or sinking fund payment date, or at the Stated Maturity or Maturity, as applicable; provided that no interest shall accrue on the amount so payable for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be.

SECTION 114. Submission to Jurisdiction.

The Company hereby irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any New York state or federal court sitting in The City of New York in any action or proceeding arising out of or relating to the Indenture and the Securities of any series, and the Company hereby irrevocably agrees that all claims in respect of such action or proceeding may be heard and determined in such New York state or federal court. The Company hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent it may effectively do so, the defense of an inconvenient forum to the maintenance of such action or proceeding.

ARTICLE TWO

SECURITIES FORMS

SECTION 201. Forms of Securities.

The Registered Securities of each series, the temporary global Securities of each series, if any, and the permanent global Securities of each series, if any, shall be in substantially the forms as shall be established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or approved from time to time by or pursuant to a Board Resolution in accordance with Section 301, shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any stock exchange on which the Securities may be listed, or to conform to usage.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on a steel engraved border or steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

SECTION 202. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.

Subject to Section 611, the Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee

By _____

Authorized Officer

SECTION 203. Securities Issuable in Global Form.

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified as contemplated by Section 301, then, notwithstanding clause (8) of Section 301 and the provisions of Section 302, any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series represented thereby may from time to time be increased or decreased to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustee or the Security Registrar in such manner and upon instructions given by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustee pursuant to Section 303 or 304. Subject to the provisions of Section 303 and, if applicable, Section 304, the Trustee or the Security Registrar shall deliver and redeliver any Security in permanent global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 303 or 304 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement, delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

The provisions of the last sentence of Section 303 shall apply to any Security represented by a Security in global form if such Security was never issued and sold by the Company and the Company delivers to the Trustee or the Security Registrar the Security in global form together with written instructions (which need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) with regard to the reduction in the principal amount of Securities represented thereby, together with the written statement contemplated by the last sentence of Section 303.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 307, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 309 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company and the Trustee shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a permanent global Security, the Holder of such permanent global Security.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITORY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITORY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

ARTICLE THREE

THE SECURITIES

SECTION 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series as Registered Securities and shall be designated as Senior Securities or Subordinated Securities. Senior Securities are unsubordinated, shall rank equally and *pari passu* with all of the Company's other Senior Indebtedness and senior to all of the Company's Subordinated Indebtedness. Subordinated Securities shall rank junior to the Company's Senior Indebtedness and equally and *pari passu* with all of the Company's other Subordinated Indebtedness. There shall be established in one or more Board Resolutions or pursuant to authority granted by one or more Board Resolutions and, subject to Section 303, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, any or all of the following, as applicable (each of which (except for the matters set forth in clauses (1), (2) and (15) below), if so provided, may be determined from time to time by the Company with respect to unissued Securities of the series when issued from time to time):

(1) the title of the Securities of the series including CUSIP and ISIN numbers (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from all other series of Securities);

(2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 304, 305, 306, 906, 1107 or 1305, and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 303, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);

(3) the date or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the principal of the Securities of the series shall be payable;

(4) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, or the method by which such rate or rates shall be determined, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on any Registered Security on any Interest Payment Date, or the method by which such date shall be determined, the basis upon which such interest shall be calculated if other than that of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months;

(5) the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of the series shall be payable, any Registered Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;

(6) the period or periods within which, or the date or dates on which, the price or prices at which, the Currency or Currencies in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company, if the Company is to have the option;

(7) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem, repay or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of a Holder thereof, and the period or periods within which or the date or dates on which, the price or prices at which, the Currency or Currencies in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(8) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denomination or denominations in which any Registered Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(9) if other than the Trustee, the identity of each Security Registrar and/or Paying Agent;

(10) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, upon redemption of the Securities of the series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity, upon surrender for repayment at the option of the Holder, or which the Trustee shall be entitled to claim pursuant to Section 504 or the method by which such portion shall be determined;

(11) if other than Dollars, the Currency or Currencies in which payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series shall be made or in which the Securities of the series shall be denominated and the particular provisions applicable thereto in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 312;

(12) whether the amount of payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more Currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(13) whether the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in one or more Currencies other than that in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable, the period or periods within which (including the Election Date), and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made, and the time and manner of determining the exchange rate between the Currency or Currencies in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable and the Currency or Currencies in which such Securities are to be paid, in each case in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 312;

(14) provisions, if any, granting special rights to the Holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of such events as may be specified;

(15) any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or covenants (including any deletions from, modifications of or additions to any of the provisions of Section 1007) of the Company with respect to Securities of the series, whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein;

(16) whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable initially in temporary global form and whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable in permanent global form and, if so, whether beneficial owners of interests in any such permanent global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of such series in certificated form and of like tenor of any authorized form and denomination and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner provided in Section 305, and the circumstances under which and the place or places where such exchanges may be made and if Securities of the series are to be issuable as a global Security, the identity of the depository for such series;

(17) the date as of which any temporary global Security representing Outstanding Securities of the series shall be dated if other than the date of original issuance of the first Security of the series to be issued;

(18) the Person to whom any interest on any Registered Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid; and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a permanent global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in Section 307;

(19) the applicability, if any, of Sections 1402 and/or 1403 to the Securities of the series and any provisions in modification of, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Article Fourteen;

(20) if the Securities of such series are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security of such series) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, then the form and/or terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;

(21) whether, under what circumstances and the Currency in which, the Company will pay Additional Amounts as contemplated by Section 1004 on the Securities of the series to any Holder who is not a United States person, or to a Holder for the account of any beneficial owner who is not a United States person (including any modification to the definition of such term) in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether the Company will have the option to redeem such Securities rather than pay such Additional Amounts (and the terms of any such option);

(22) the designation of the initial Exchange Rate Agent, if any;

(23) if the Securities of the series are to be issued upon the exercise of warrants, the time, manner and place for such Securities to be authenticated and delivered;

- (24) if the Securities of the series are to be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (including the Company), the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable;
- (25) if the Securities of the series are to be secured, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so secured;
- (26) the appointment of any calculation agent, foreign currency exchange agent or other additional agents;
- (27) if the Securities of the series are to be listed on a securities exchange, the name of such exchange may be indicated; and
- (28) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture or the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above (subject to Section 303) and set forth in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto. All Securities of any one series need not be issued at the same time and, unless otherwise provided, a series may be reopened, without the consent of the Holders, for issuances of additional Securities of such series.

If any of the terms of the Securities of any series are established by action taken pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions, a copy of an appropriate record of such action(s) shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the Securities of such series.

SECTION 302. Denominations.

The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 301. With respect to Securities of any series denominated in Dollars, in the absence of any such provisions with respect to the Securities of any series, the Registered Securities of such series, other than Registered Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination) shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

SECTION 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chief Executive Officer, its President, its Chief Operating Officer, its Chief Financial Officer or any of its Vice Presidents and attested by its Secretary or any of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such authorized officer and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company, to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order and an Officers' Certificate and Opinion of Counsel in accordance with Section 102 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If all the Securities of any series are not to be issued at one time and if the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series shall so permit, such Company Order may set forth procedures acceptable to the Trustee for the issuance of such Securities and determining the terms of particular Securities of such series, such as interest rate, maturity date, date of issuance and date from which interest shall accrue. In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and shall be fully protected in relying upon,

- (i) an Opinion of Counsel stating,
 - (a) that the form or forms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
 - (b) that the terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and
 - (c) that such Securities, when completed by appropriate insertions and executed and delivered by the Company to the Trustee for authentication in accordance with this Indenture, authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in accordance with this Indenture and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization and other similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights, to general equitable principles and to such other qualifications as such counsel shall conclude do not materially affect the rights of Holders of such Securities; and
- (ii) an Officers' Certificate stating, to the best of the knowledge of the signers of such certificate, that no Event of Default with respect to any of the Securities shall have occurred and be continuing.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 301 and of this Section 303, if all the Securities of any series are not to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver an Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 301 or the Company Order, Opinion of Counsel or Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to the preceding paragraph at the time of issuance of each Security of such series, but such order, opinion and certificates, with appropriate modifications to cover such future issuances, shall be delivered at or before the time of issuance of the first Security of such series.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties, obligations or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee. Notwithstanding the generality of the foregoing, the Trustee will not be required to authenticate Securities denominated in a Foreign Currency if the Trustee reasonably believes that it would be unable to perform its duties with respect to such Securities.

Each Registered Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein duly executed by the Trustee or an Authenticating Agent by manual signature of an authorized signatory, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 310 together with a written statement (which need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) stating that such Security has never been issued and sold by the Company, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

SECTION 304. Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities that are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. In the case of Securities of any series, such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form (which shall be exchanged as provided in or pursuant to a Board Resolution), if temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount and like tenor of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

SECTION 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee or in any office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment a register for each series of Securities (the registers maintained in such office or in any such office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes referred to collectively as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Registered Securities and of transfers of Registered Securities. The Security Register shall be in written form or any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. The Trustee, at its Corporate Trust Office, is hereby initially appointed "Security Registrar" for the purpose of registering Registered Securities and transfers of Registered Securities on such Security Register as herein provided, and for facilitating exchanges of temporary global Securities for permanent global Securities or definitive Securities, or both, or of permanent global Securities for definitive Securities, or both, as herein provided. In the event that the Trustee shall cease to be Security Registrar, it shall have the right to examine the Security Register at all reasonable times. In acting hereunder and in connection with the Securities, the Security Registrar shall act solely as an agent of the Company, and will not thereby assume any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust for or with any Holder.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Registered Security of any series at any office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding and containing identical terms and provisions.

At the option of the Holder, Registered Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination or denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions, upon surrender of the Registered Securities to be exchanged at any such office or agency. Whenever any Registered Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Registered Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, any permanent global Security shall be exchangeable only as provided in this paragraph. If any beneficial owner of an interest in a permanent global Security is entitled to exchange such interest for Securities of such series and of like tenor and principal amount of another authorized form and denomination, as specified as contemplated by Section 301 and provided that any applicable notice provided in the permanent global Security shall have been given, then without unnecessary delay but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interest may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee definitive Securities in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such permanent global Security shall be surrendered by the depository specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 or such other depository as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, or to the Security Registrar, to be exchanged, in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities of the same series without charge and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such permanent global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such permanent global Security to be exchanged; provided, however, that no such exchanges may occur during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities to be redeemed and ending on the relevant Redemption Date if the Security for which exchange is requested may be among those selected for redemption. If a Registered Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a permanent global Security after the close of business at the office or agency where such exchange occurs on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest or interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Registered Security, but will be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such permanent global Security is payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Registered Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar or any transfer agent) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar, duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney or any transfer agent duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company or the Trustee may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, 906, 1107 or 1305 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security if such Security may be among those selected for redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before selection of the Securities to be redeemed under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Registered Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except, in the case of any Registered Security to be redeemed in part, the portion thereof not to be redeemed or (iii) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security that has been surrendered for repayment at the option of the Holder, except the portion, if any, of such Security not to be so repaid.

The Trustee shall have no responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner of a global Security, a member of, or a participant in, DTC or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of DTC or its nominee or of any participant or member thereof, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any participant, member, beneficial owner or other Person (other than DTC) of any notice (including any notice of redemption or purchase) or the payment of any amount or delivery of any Securities (or other security or property) under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Holders and all payments to be made to Holders in respect of the Securities shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered Holders (which shall be DTC or its nominee in the case of a global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in any global Security shall be exercised only through DTC subject to the applicable rules and procedures of DTC. The Trustee may rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by DTC with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners.

The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among DTC participants, members or beneficial owners in any global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by, the terms of this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof. Neither the Trustee nor any of its agents shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by DTC.

SECTION 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee or the Company, together with, in proper cases, such security or indemnity as may be required by the Company or the Trustee to save each of them or any agent of either of them harmless, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and to the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall, subject to the following paragraph, execute and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company, the Paying Agent, or the Security Registrar may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee, the Paying Agent, or the Security Registrar and their respective counsels) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

SECTION 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset.

(a) Except as otherwise specified with respect to a series of Securities in accordance with the provisions of Section 301, interest, if any, on any Registered Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose pursuant to Section 1002; provided, however, that each installment of interest, if any, on any Registered Security may at the Company's option be paid by (i) mailing a check for such interest, payable to or upon the written order of the Person entitled thereto pursuant to Section 309, to the address of such Person as it appears on the Security Register or (ii) transfer to an account maintained by the payee located in the United States.

Except as otherwise specified with respect to a series of Securities in accordance with the provisions of Section 301, any interest on any Registered Security of any series that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called “Defaulted Interest”) shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder thereof on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Registered Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment (which shall not be less than 20 days after such notice is received by the Trustee), and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)) equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of Registered Securities of such series at his address as it appears in the Security Register not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

(b) The provisions of this Section 307(b) may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 301 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 301). The interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) on any Security of such series may be reset by the Company on the date or dates specified on the face of such Security (each an “Optional Reset Date”). The Company may exercise such option with respect to such Security by notifying the Trustee of such exercise at least 45 but not more than 60 days prior to an Optional Reset Date for such Security. Not later than 35 days prior to each Optional Reset Date, the Trustee shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, to the Holder of any such Security a notice (the “Reset Notice”) indicating whether the Company has elected to reset the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), and if so (i) such new interest rate (or such new spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) and (ii) the provisions, if any, for redemption during the period from such Optional Reset Date to the next Optional Reset Date or if there is no such next Optional Reset Date, to the Stated Maturity of such Security (each such period a “Subsequent Interest Period”), including the date or dates on which or the period or periods during which and the price or prices at which such redemption may occur during the Subsequent Interest Period.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days prior to the Optional Reset Date (or if 20 days does not fall on a Business Day, the next succeeding Business Day), the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice and establish a higher interest rate (or a spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable) for the Subsequent Interest Period by causing the Trustee to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, notice of such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) is reset on an Optional Reset Date, and with respect to which the Holders of such Securities have not tendered such Securities for repayment (or have validly revoked any such tender) pursuant to the next succeeding paragraph, will bear such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable).

The Holder of any such Security will have the option to elect repayment by the Company of the principal of such Security on each Optional Reset Date at a price equal to the principal amount thereof plus interest accrued to such Optional Reset Date. In order to obtain repayment on an Optional Reset Date, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustee shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to such Optional Reset Date and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to the Reset Notice, the Holder may, by written notice to the Trustee, revoke such tender or repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before such Optional Reset Date.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and Section 305, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 308. Optional Extension of Maturity.

The provisions of this Section 308 may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 301 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 301). The Stated Maturity of any Security of such series may be extended at the option of the Company for the period or periods specified on the face of such Security (each an "Extension Period") up to but not beyond the date (the "Final Maturity") set forth on the face of such Security. The Company may exercise such option with respect to any Security by notifying the Trustee of such exercise at least 45 but not more than 60 days prior to the Stated Maturity of such Security in effect prior to the exercise of such option (the "Original Stated Maturity"). If the Company exercises such option, the Trustee shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, to the Holder of such Security not later than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity a notice (the "Extension Notice"), prepared by the Company, indicating (i) the election of the Company to extend the Stated Maturity, (ii) the new Stated Maturity, (iii) the interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), if any, applicable to the Extension Period and (iv) the provisions, if any, for redemption during such Extension Period. Upon the Trustee's transmittal of the Extension Notice, the Stated Maturity of such Security shall be extended automatically and, except as modified by the Extension Notice and as described in the next paragraph, such Security will have the same terms as prior to the transmittal of such Extension Notice.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days before the Original Stated Maturity of such Security (of if 20 days does not fall on a Business Day, the next succeeding Business Day), the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Extension Notice and establish a higher interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such higher interest rate, if applicable) for the Extension Period by causing the Trustee to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, notice of such higher interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the Stated Maturity is extended will bear such higher interest rate.

If the Company extends the Stated Maturity of any Security, the Holder will have the option to elect repayment of such Security by the Company on the Original Stated Maturity at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus interest accrued to such date. In order to obtain repayment on the Original Stated Maturity once the Company has extended the Stated Maturity thereof, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders, except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustee shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to an Extension Notice, the Holder may by written notice to the Trustee revoke such tender for repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before the Original Stated Maturity.

SECTION 309. Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Registered Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall treat the Person in whose name such Registered Security is registered as the owner of such Registered Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Sections 305 and 307) interest, if any, on such Registered Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Registered Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

None of the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Security in global form or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any global temporary or permanent Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, or any agent of the Company or the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any depository, as a Holder, with respect to such global Security or impair, as between such depository and owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such depository (or its nominee) as Holder of such global Security.

SECTION 310. Cancellation.

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, repayment at the option of the Holder, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee, and any such Securities surrendered directly to the Trustee for any such purpose shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. If the Company shall so acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are surrendered to the Trustee for cancellation. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. Cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be destroyed by the Trustee in accordance with its customary procedures, unless by a Company Order the Company directs the Trustee to deliver a certificate of such destruction to the Company or to return them to the Company.

SECTION 311. Computation of Interest.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 with respect to Securities of any series, interest, if any, on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months.

SECTION 312. Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities.

(a) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, with respect to Registered Securities of any series not permitting the election provided for in paragraph (b) below or the Holders of which have not made the election provided for in paragraph (b) below, payment of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on any Registered Security of such series will be made in the Currency in which such Registered Security is payable. The provisions of this Section 312 may be modified or superseded with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301.

(b) It may be provided pursuant to Section 301, if so expressly specified with respect to Registered Securities of any series, that Holders shall have the option, subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) below, to receive payments of principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest, if any, on such Registered Securities in any of the Currencies which may be designated for such election by delivering to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities a written election with signature guarantees and in the applicable form established pursuant to Section 301, not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the applicable payment date. If a Holder so elects to receive such payments in any such Currency, such election will remain in effect for such Holder or any transferee of such Holder until changed by such Holder or such transferee by written notice to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities (but any such change must be made not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the next payment date to be effective for the payment to be made on such payment date and no such change of election may be made with respect to payments to be made on any Registered Security of such series with respect to which an Event of Default has occurred or with respect to which the Company has deposited funds pursuant to Article Four or Fourteen or with respect to which a notice of redemption has been given by the Company or a notice of option to elect repayment has been sent by such Holder or such transferee). Any Holder of any such Registered Security who shall not have delivered any such election to the Trustee of such series of Registered Securities not later than the close of business on the applicable Election Date will be paid the amount due on the applicable payment date in the relevant Currency as provided in Section 312(a). The Trustee for each such series of Registered Securities shall notify the Exchange Rate Agent as soon as practicable after the Election Date of the aggregate principal amount of Registered Securities for which Holders have made such written election.

(c) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 301, then, not later than the fourth Business Day after the Election Date for each payment date for Registered Securities of any series, the Exchange Rate Agent will deliver to the Company a written notice specifying the Currency in which Registered Securities of such series are payable, the respective aggregate amounts of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Registered Securities to be paid on such payment date, specifying the amounts in such Currency so payable in respect of the Registered Securities as to which the Holders of Registered Securities denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above. Unless the Trustee is acting as the Exchange Rate Agent, the Trustee shall have no obligation to complete the actual exchange of distribution amounts from one Currency to another Currency. If the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 301 and if at least one Holder has made such election, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, on the second Business Day preceding such payment date the Company will deliver to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate in respect of the Dollar or Foreign Currency or Currencies payments to be made on such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, the Dollar or Foreign Currency or Currencies amount receivable by Holders of Registered Securities who have elected payment in a Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above shall be determined by the Company on the basis of the applicable Market Exchange Rate in effect on the second Business Day (the "Valuation Date") immediately preceding each payment date, and such determination shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes, absent manifest error.

(d) If a Conversion Event occurs with respect to a Foreign Currency in which any of the Securities are denominated or payable other than pursuant to an election provided for pursuant to paragraph (b) above, then with respect to each date for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the applicable Securities denominated or payable in such Foreign Currency occurring after the last date on which such Foreign Currency was used (the "Conversion Date"), the Dollar shall be the currency of payment for use on each such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, the Dollar amount to be paid by the Company to the Trustee of each such series of Securities and by such Trustee or any Paying Agent to the Holders of such Securities with respect to such payment date shall be, in the case of a Foreign Currency other than a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency or, in the case of a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, in each case as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent in the manner provided in paragraph (f) or (g) below.

(e) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if the Holder of a Registered Security denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above, and a Conversion Event occurs with respect to such elected Currency, such Holder shall receive payment in the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election; and if a Conversion Event occurs with respect to the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election, such Holder shall receive payment in Dollars as provided in paragraph (d) of this Section 312.

(f) The “Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and shall be obtained for each subsequent payment date by converting the specified Foreign Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate on the Conversion Date.

(g) The “Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and subject to the provisions of paragraph (h) below shall be the sum of each amount obtained by converting the Specified Amount of each Component Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate for such Component Currency on the Valuation Date with respect to each payment.

(h) For purposes of this Section 312, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

A “Component Currency” shall mean any currency which, on the Conversion Date, was a component currency of the relevant currency unit.

A “Specified Amount” of a Component Currency shall mean the number of units of such Component Currency or fractions thereof which were represented in the relevant currency unit on the Conversion Date. If after the Conversion Date the official unit of any Component Currency is altered by way of combination or subdivision, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be divided or multiplied in the same proportion. If after the Conversion Date two or more Component Currencies are consolidated into a single currency, the respective Specified Amounts of such Component Currencies shall be replaced by an amount in such single currency equal to the sum of the respective Specified Amounts of such consolidated Component Currencies expressed in such single currency, and such amount shall thereafter be a Specified Amount and such single currency shall thereafter be a Component Currency. If after the Conversion Date any Component Currency shall be divided into two or more currencies, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be replaced by amounts of such two or more currencies, having an aggregate Dollar Equivalent value at the Market Exchange Rate on the date of such replacement equal to the Dollar Equivalent of the Specified Amount of such former Component Currency at the Market Exchange Rate immediately before such division, and such amounts shall thereafter be Specified Amounts and such currencies shall thereafter be Component Currencies. If, after the Conversion Date of the relevant currency unit, a Conversion Event (other than any event referred to above in this definition of “Specified Amount”) occurs with respect to any Component Currency of such currency unit and is continuing on the applicable Valuation Date, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall, for purposes of calculating the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, be converted into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate in effect on the Conversion Date of such Component Currency.

An “Election Date” shall mean the Regular Record Date for the applicable series of Registered Securities or at least 16 days prior to Maturity, as the case may be, or such other prior date for any series of Registered Securities as specified pursuant to clause 13 of Section 301 by which the written election referred to in Section 312(b) may be made.

All decisions and determinations of the Exchange Rate Agent regarding the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, the Market Exchange Rate and changes in the Specified Amounts as specified above shall be in its sole discretion and shall, in the absence of manifest error, be conclusive for all purposes and irrevocably binding upon the Company, the Trustee for the appropriate series of Securities and all Holders of such Securities denominated or payable in the relevant Currency. The Exchange Rate Agent shall promptly give written notice to the Company and the Trustee for the appropriate series of Securities of any such decision or determination.

In the event that the Company determines in good faith that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to a Foreign Currency, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and such Trustee will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided in Section 106 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date. In the event the Company so determines that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to any other currency unit in which Securities are denominated or payable, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and such Trustee will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided in Section 106 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date and the Specified Amount of each Component Currency on the Conversion Date. In the event the Company determines in good faith that any subsequent change in any Component Currency as set forth in the definition of Specified Amount above has occurred, the Company will similarly give written notice to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent.

The Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities shall be fully justified and protected in relying and acting upon information received by it from the Company and the Exchange Rate Agent and shall not otherwise have any duty or obligation to determine the accuracy or validity of such information independent of the Company or the Exchange Rate Agent.

SECTION 313. Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent.

(a) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Foreign Currency or (ii) may be payable in a Foreign Currency, or so long as it is required under any other provision of this Indenture, then the Company will engage and maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent. The Company will cause the Exchange Rate Agent to make the necessary foreign exchange determinations at the time and in the manner specified pursuant to Section 301 for the purpose of determining the applicable rate of exchange and, if applicable, for the purpose of converting the issued Foreign Currency into the applicable payment Currency for the payment of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, pursuant to Section 312.

(b) No resignation of the Exchange Rate Agent and no appointment of a successor Exchange Rate Agent pursuant to this Section shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Exchange Rate Agent as evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Company and the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities accepting such appointment executed by the successor Exchange Rate Agent.

(c) If the Exchange Rate Agent shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Exchange Rate Agent for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Exchange Rate Agent or Exchange Rate Agents with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Exchange Rate Agent may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, at any time there shall only be one Exchange Rate Agent with respect to the Securities of any particular series that are originally issued by the Company on the same date and that are initially denominated and/or payable in the same Currency).

SECTION 314. CUSIP and ISIN Numbers.

The Company in issuing the Securities may use “CUSIP” or “ISIN” numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall indicate the respective “CUSIP” or “ISIN” numbers of the Securities in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company shall advise the Trustee as promptly as practicable in writing of any change in the CUSIP or ISIN numbers.

ARTICLE FOUR

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

SECTION 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

Except as set forth below, this Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities specified in such Company Request (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or pursuant hereto, any surviving rights of tender for repayment at the option of the Holders and any right to receive Additional Amounts, as provided in Section 1004), and the Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order, and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series when

(1) either

(A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust with the Trustee or any Paying Agent or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all Securities of such series

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose, solely for the benefit of the Holders, an amount in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has irrevocably paid or caused to be irrevocably paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee under Section 606, the obligations of the Company to any Authenticating Agent under Section 612 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 402 and the last paragraph of Section 1003 shall survive any termination of this Indenture.

SECTION 402. Application of Trust Funds.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, for whose payment such money has been deposited with or received by the Trustee, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. In acting under this Indenture and in connection with the Securities, the Paying Agent shall act solely as an agent of the Company, and will not thereby assume any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust for or with any Holder.

ARTICLE FIVE

REMEDIES

SECTION 501. Events of Default.

“Event of Default”, wherever used herein with respect to any particular series of Securities, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether or not it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless otherwise specified with respect to a series of Securities in accordance with the provisions of Section 301.:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when such interest becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable at its Maturity; or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of any Security of that series, and continuance of such default for a period of 2 Business Days; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or agreement of the Company in this Indenture with respect to any Security of that series (other than a covenant or agreement a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of a series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder;
- (5) the Company, pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:
 - (A) commences a voluntary case or proceeding under any Bankruptcy Law,
 - (B) consents to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it, or files a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief against it,
 - (C) consents to the entry of a decree or order for relief against it in an involuntary case or proceeding,
 - (D) consents to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a Custodian of the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or
 - (E) makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or admits in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due or takes any corporate action in furtherance of any such action; or
- (6) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law that:
 - (A) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding, or
 - (B) adjudges the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approves as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company, or
 - (C) appoints a Custodian of the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or
 - (D) orders the winding up or liquidation of the Company,

and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

- (7) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

The term “Bankruptcy Law” means title 11, U.S. Code or any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law. The term “Custodian” means any custodian, receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

SECTION 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then and in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may (and the Trustee shall at the request of such Holders) declare the principal (or, if any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal as may be specified in the terms thereof) of all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by the Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal or specified portion thereof shall become immediately due and payable.

Any application by the Trustee for written instructions from the requisite amount of Holders (as determined pursuant to this Indenture) may, at the option of the Trustee, set forth in writing any action proposed to be taken or omitted by the Trustee under this Indenture and the date on and/or after which such action shall be taken or such omission shall be effective. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken by, or omission of, the Trustee in accordance with a proposal included in such application on or after the date specified in such application unless prior to taking any such action (or the effective date in the case of an omission), the Trustee shall have received written instructions from the requisite amount of Holders (as determined pursuant to this Indenture) in response to such application specifying the action to be taken or omitted.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter provided in this Article, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)):

(A) all overdue installments of interest, if any, on all Outstanding Securities of that series,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) all Outstanding Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and interest thereon at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue installments of interest at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities, and

(D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the nonpayment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series that have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if:

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security of any series when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of any series at its Maturity,

then the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of Securities of such series, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, with interest upon any overdue principal (and premium, if any) and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, upon any overdue installments of interest, if any, at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, the Paying Agent, the Security Registrar and their respective agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon Securities of such series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities of such series, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

SECTION 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities of any series shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of any overdue principal, premium or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise:

- (i) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal as may be provided for in the terms thereof) (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents, and take such other actions, including serving on a committee of creditors, as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and
- (ii) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator (or other similar official) in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee, their agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee under Section 606.

Subject to Article Eight and Section 902 and unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 301, nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder of a Security any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder of a Security in any such proceeding.

SECTION 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or any of the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered. The Trustee shall be entitled to participate, in its capacity as Trustee, on behalf of (and at the request of) the Holders, as a member of any official committee of creditors in the matters it deems advisable.

SECTION 506. Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee under Section 606 and any other agent hereunder;

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, giving effect to Article XVI, if applicable, but otherwise ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the aggregate amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, respectively; and

THIRD: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person or Persons entitled thereto.

SECTION 507. Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity, security, or both, satisfactory to the Trustee, against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity and/or security has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all such Holders.

SECTION 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right which is absolute and unconditional to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Sections 305 and 307) interest, if any, on such Security on the Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date or, in the case of repayment at the option of the Holders on the Repayment Date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

SECTION 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder of a Security has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of Securities shall, subject to any determination in such proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

SECTION 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 306, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders of Securities is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

SECTION 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Security to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities, as the case may be.

SECTION 512. Control by Holders of Securities.

Subject to Section 602, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture,
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee that is not inconsistent with such direction,
- (3) the Trustee need not take any action that might involve it in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders of Securities of such series not consenting, and
- (4) prior to taking any such action hereunder, the Trustee may demand security or indemnity, or both, satisfactory to it in accordance with Section 602.

SECTION 513. Waiver of Past Defaults.

Subject to Section 502, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to Securities of such series and its consequences, except a default

(1) in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of such series, or

(2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 514. Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, that may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

ARTICLE SIX

THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 601. Notice of Defaults.

Within 90 days after the occurrence of any Default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any series, the Trustee shall transmit in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), notice of such Default hereunder known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, unless such Default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a Default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of such series, or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment with respect to the Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Holders of the Securities of such series; and provided further that in the case of any Default or breach of the character specified in Section 501 (4) with respect to the Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 60 days after the occurrence thereof.

SECTION 602. Certain Rights and Duties of Trustee.

(1) Prior to the time when the occurrence of an Event of Default becomes known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to a series of Securities that may have occurred:

(a) the duties and obligations of the Trustee hereunder and with respect to the Securities of any series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, including without limitation Section 107 of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, including without limitation Section 107 of this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(b) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform on their face to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of any mathematical calculations or other facts stated herein).

(2) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and use the same degree of care and skill in its exercise as a prudent Person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(3) The Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was grossly negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts.

(4) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties.

(5) Any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order (other than delivery of any Security, to the Trustee for authentication and delivery pursuant to Section 303 which shall be sufficiently evidenced as provided therein) and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution.

(6) Whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may require and, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon a Board Resolution, an Opinion of Counsel or an Officers' Certificate.

(7) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(8) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any series pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity, or both, satisfactory to the Trustee, against the costs, expenses and liabilities (including the reasonable fees and expenses of its agents and counsel) which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction.

(9) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled upon reasonable notice and at reasonable times during normal business hours to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney, at the Company's expense.

(10) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

(11) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture.

(12) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and to each agent, custodian and other Person retained to act hereunder.

(13) The permissive rights of the Trustee enumerated herein shall not be construed as duties and the Trustee shall not be answerable for other than its own grossly negligent action, its own grossly negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct with respect to such permissive rights.

(14) The Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to such Securities.

(15) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture.

(16) The Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

(17) Anything in this Indenture notwithstanding, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action.

(18) The Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its reasonable control, including without limitation, acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communications services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authorities and governmental action.

Every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct of, or affecting the liability of, or affording protection to, the Trustee shall be subject to the relevant provisions of this Section 602 and the TIA.

The Trustee shall not be required to expend or risk its own funds, give any bond or surety in respect of the performance of its powers and duties hereunder, or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

The parties hereto acknowledge that in order to help the United States government fight the funding of terrorism and money laundering activities, pursuant to Federal regulations that became effective on October 1, 2003 (Section 326 of the USA PATRIOT Act) all financial institutions are required to obtain, verify, record and update information that identifies each person establishing a relationship or opening an account. The parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide to the Trustee such information as it may request, from time to time, in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the USA PATRIOT Act, including but not limited to the name, address, tax identification number and other information that will allow it to identify the individual or entity who is establishing the relationship or opening the account and may also ask for formation documents such as articles of incorporation or other identifying documents to be provided.

SECTION 603. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificate of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities, except that the Trustee represents that it is duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform its obligations hereunder and that the statements made by it in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

SECTION 604. May Hold Securities.

The Trustee, any Paying Agent, Security Registrar, Authenticating Agent or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to TIA Sections 310(b) and 311, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Paying Agent, Security Registrar, Authenticating Agent or such other agent.

SECTION 605. Money Held in Trust.

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

SECTION 606. Compensation and Reimbursement and Indemnification of Trustee.

The Company agrees:

(1) To pay to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee from time to time such compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder as has been agreed upon from time to time in writing (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust).

(2) Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse each of the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents, counsel, accountants and experts), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its gross negligence or willful misconduct.

(3) To indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee and their respective officers, directors, employees, representatives and agents, for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without gross negligence or willful misconduct on its own part (as adjudicated by a court of competent jurisdiction in a final and non-appealable decision), arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses (including reasonable fees and expenses of its agents and counsel) of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder (whether asserted by any Holder, the Company or otherwise). The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any third-party claim for which it may seek indemnity of which it has received written notice. Failure by the Trustee to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company of its obligations hereunder unless, and solely to the extent that, such failure materially prejudices the Company's defense of such claim. The Company shall defend the claim, with counsel satisfactory to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall provide reasonable cooperation at the Company's expense in the defense; provided that if the defendants in any such claim include both the Company and the Trustee and the Trustee shall have concluded that there may be legal defenses available to it which are different from or additional to those available to the Company, or the Trustee has concluded that there may be any other actual or potential conflicting interests between the Company and the Trustee, the Trustee shall have the right to select separate counsel and the Company shall be required to pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such separate counsel. Any settlement which affects the Trustee may not be entered into without the written consent of the Trustee, unless the Trustee is given a full and unconditional release from liability with respect to the claims covered thereby and such settlement does not include a statement or admission of fault, culpability or failure to act by or on behalf of the Trustee. Any settlement by the Trustee which affects the Company may not be entered into without the written consent of the Company, unless such settlement does not include a statement or admission of fault, culpability or failure to act by or on behalf of the Company.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section, the Trustee shall have a claim prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on particular Securities.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services after an Event of Default specified in Section 501 occurs, the expenses and compensation for such services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar Federal, State or analogous foreign law for the relief of debtors.

The provisions of this Section 606 shall survive the resignation or removal of the Trustee and the satisfaction, termination or discharge of this Indenture.

SECTION 607. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder that shall be eligible to act as Trustee under TIA Section 310(a)(1) and shall have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If such Corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of Federal, State, Territorial or the District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

SECTION 608. Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture.

SECTION 609. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

(a) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 610. All outstanding fees, expenses and indemnities of the Trustee shall be satisfied by the Company upon resignation or removal.

(b) The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company.

(c) The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by (i) the Company, by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee, provided that contemporaneously therewith (x) the Company immediately appoints a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series meeting the requirements of Section 607 hereof and (y) the terms of Section 610 hereof are complied with in respect of such appointment (the Trustee being removed hereby agreeing to execute the instrument contemplated by Section 610(b) hereof, if applicable, under such circumstances) and provided further that no Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and then be continuing at such time, or (ii) Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

(d) If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b) after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 607 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company by or pursuant to a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee and appoint a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (ii) subject to TIA Section 315(e), any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

(e) If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of a notice of resignation or the delivery of an Act of removal, the Trustee resigning or being removed may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(f) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series). If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the existing Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to Securities of such series.

(g) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series in the manner provided for notices to the Holders of Securities in Section 106. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

SECTION 610. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee, and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 606.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and that (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates. Whenever there is a successor Trustee with respect to one or more (but less than all) series of securities issued pursuant to this Indenture, the terms "Indenture" and "Securities" shall have the meanings specified in the provisos to the respective definition of those terms in Section 101 which contemplate such situation.

(c) Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

SECTION 611. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any Corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such Corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any such successor Trustee may authenticate and deliver such Securities, in either its own name or that of its predecessor Trustee, with the full force and effect which this Indenture provides for the certificate of authentication of the Trustee; provided, however, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

SECTION 612. Appointment of Authenticating Agent.

At any time when any of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents (which may be an Affiliate or Affiliates of the Company provided such Affiliate or Affiliates shall be otherwise eligible under this Section) with respect to one or more series of Securities that shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue or upon exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, a copy of which instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and, except as may otherwise be provided pursuant to Section 301, shall at all times be a bank or trust company or Corporation organized and doing business and in good standing under the laws of the United States of America or of any State or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, eligible to serve as trustee hereunder pursuant to Section 607. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. In case at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any Corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any Corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such Corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent for any series of Securities may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee for such series and to the Company. The Trustee for any series of Securities may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee for such series may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall promptly give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve in the manner set forth in Section 106. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent herein. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation including reimbursement of its reasonable expenses for its services under this Section.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to or in lieu of the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication substantially in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee

By: _____
as Authenticating Agent

By: _____
Authorized Officer

If all of the Securities of a series may not be originally issued at one time, and the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company wishes to have Securities of such series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested by the Company in writing (which writing need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), shall appoint in accordance with this Section an Authenticating Agent (which, if so requested by the Company, shall be an Affiliate of the Company provided such Affiliate shall be eligible under this Section) having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such series of Securities, provided that the terms and conditions of such appointment are acceptable to the Trustee.

ARTICLE SEVEN

HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

SECTION 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(a) Semi-annually, not later than March 15 and September 15 in each year, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of the preceding March 1 or September 1, as the case may be; and

(b) At such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished;

Excluding from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

SECTION 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 701 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 701 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b) The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and duties of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent nor any Paying Agent nor any Security Registrar nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with TIA Section 312, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under TIA Section 312(b).

SECTION 703. Reports by Trustee.

Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first May 15 after the first issuance of Securities pursuant to this Indenture, the Trustee shall transmit by mail (at the expense of the Company) to all Holders of Securities in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c) a brief report dated as of such May 15 which meets the requirements of TIA Section 313(a).

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to such Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange, if any, upon which the Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will promptly notify the Trustee of the listing of the Securities on any stock exchange. In the event that, on any such reporting date, no events have occurred under the applicable sections of the TIA within the 12 months preceding such reporting date, the Trustee shall be under no duty or obligation to provide such reports.

SECTION 704. Reports by Company.

The Company will:

(1) file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company is required to file the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) which the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such Sections, then it will file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports which may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations; and

(2) file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company with the conditions and covenants of this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations.

The Trustee shall transmit by mail to the Holders of Securities (at the expense of the Company), within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to subparagraphs (1) and (2) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission. In no event shall the Trustee be obligated to determine whether or not any report, information or document shall have been filed with the Commission.

Delivery of such reports, information, and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to conclusively rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

SECTION 705. Calculation of Original Issue Discount.

The Company shall file with the Trustee promptly at the end of each calendar year a written notice specifying the amount of original issue discount (including daily rates and accrual periods), if any, accrued on Outstanding Securities as of the end of such year.

ARTICLE EIGHT

CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER

SECTION 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge with or into any other Corporation or convey or transfer all or substantially all of its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

(1) either the Company shall be the continuing Corporation, or the Corporation (if other than the Company) formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have happened and be continuing; and

(3) the Company and the successor Person have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

SECTION 802. Successor Person Substituted.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with Section 801, the successor Corporation formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the successor Person to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named as the Company herein; and in the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and may be dissolved and liquidated.

ARTICLE NINE

SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.

Without the consent of any Holders of Securities, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

(1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities contained; or

(2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or

(3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); provided, however, that in respect of any such additional Events of Default such supplemental indenture may provide for a particular period of grace after default (which period may be shorter or longer than that allowed in the case of other defaults) or may provide for an immediate enforcement upon such default or may limit the remedies available to the Trustee upon such default or may limit the right of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of that or those series of Securities to which such additional Events of Default apply to waive such default; or

(4) to change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture; provided that any such change or elimination shall become effective only when there is no Security Outstanding of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture that is entitled to the benefit of such provision; or

(5) to secure the Securities; or

(6) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 201 and 301, including the provisions and procedures relating to Securities convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (including the Company); or

(7) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee; or

(8) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; provided that such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect; or

(9) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance and discharge of any series of Securities pursuant to Sections 401, 1402 and 1403; provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of such series or any other series of Securities in any material respect.

SECTION 902. Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture that affects such series of Securities or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of such series of Securities under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of (or premium, if any) or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, subject to the provisions of Section 308; or the terms of any sinking fund with respect to any Security; or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest (or change the manner of calculating the rate of interest, thereon, or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or change any obligation of the Company to pay Additional Amounts pursuant to Section 1004 (except as contemplated by Section 801(1) and permitted by Section 901(1)), or reduce the portion of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or Indexed Security that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, or upon the redemption thereof or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 504, or adversely affect any right of repayment at the option of the Holder of any Security, or change any Place of Payment where, or the Currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, on or after the Redemption Date or the Repayment Date, as the case may be), or adversely affect any right to convert or exchange any Security as may be provided pursuant to Section 301 herein, or modify the subordination provisions set forth in Article Sixteen in a manner that is adverse to the Holder of any Outstanding Security, or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver with respect to such series (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of Section 1504 for quorum or voting, or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 513 or Section 1007, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder of a Security with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 610(b) and 901(8).

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

A supplemental indenture that changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or that modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Persons entitled to consent to any indenture supplemental hereto. If a record date is fixed, the Holders on such record date, or their duly designated proxies, and only such Persons, shall be entitled to consent to such supplemental indenture, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided, that unless such consent shall have become effective by virtue of the requisite percentage having been obtained prior to the date that is 90 days after such record date, any such consent previously given shall automatically and without further action by any Holder be cancelled and of no further effect.

SECTION 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modification thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and shall be fully protected in relying upon, in addition to the documents required by Section 102 of this Indenture, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

SECTION 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

SECTION 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect.

SECTION 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall, if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

ARTICLE TEN

COVENANTS

SECTION 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of such series of Securities and this Indenture. Unless otherwise specified with respect to Securities of any series pursuant to Section 301, at the option of the Company, all payments of principal may be paid by check to the registered Holder of the Registered Security or other person entitled thereto against surrender of such Security.

SECTION 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Company shall maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of each such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency in respect of any series of Securities or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as its agent to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all of such purposes, and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in accordance with the requirements set forth above for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby designates as a Place of Payment for each series of Securities the office or agency of the Company in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, and initially appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office in Boston, Massachusetts as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a currency other than Dollars or (ii) may be payable in a currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of the Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent.

SECTION 1003. Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of any Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)), sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of such series so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum (in the Currency or Currencies described in the preceding paragraph) sufficient to pay the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, so becoming due, such sum of money to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums of money held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as otherwise provided in the Securities of any series, any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company upon Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such money held in trust, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

SECTION 1004. Additional Amounts.

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of Additional Amounts, the Company will pay to the Holder of any Security of such series such Additional Amounts as may be specified as contemplated by Section 301. Whenever in this Indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of any series or the net proceeds received on the sale or exchange of any Security of any series, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of Additional Amounts provided for by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301 to the extent that, in such context, Additional Amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof pursuant to such terms and express mention of the payment of Additional Amounts (if applicable) in any provisions hereof shall not be construed as excluding Additional Amounts in those provisions hereof where such express mention is not made.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, if the Securities of a series provide for the payment of Additional Amounts, at least 10 days prior to the first Interest Payment Date with respect to that series of Securities (or if the Securities of that series will not bear interest prior to Maturity, the first day on which a payment of principal premium is made), and at least 10 days prior to each date of payment of principal, premium or interest if there has been any change with respect to the matters set forth in the below-mentioned Officers' Certificate, the Company will furnish the Trustee and the Company's principal Paying Agent or Paying Agents, if other than the Trustee, with an Officers' Certificate instructing the Trustee and such Paying Agent or Paying Agents whether such payment of principal, premium or interest on the Securities of that series shall be made to Holders of Securities of that series who are not United States persons, or to such Holders for the account of beneficial owners of such Securities who are not United States persons, without withholding for or on account of any tax, assessment or other governmental charge described in the Securities of that series. If any such withholding shall be required, then such Officers' Certificate shall specify by country the amount, if any, required to be withheld on such payments to such Holders of Securities of that series and the Company will pay to the Trustee or such Paying Agent the Additional Amounts required by the terms of such Securities. In the event that the Trustee or any Paying Agent, as the case may be, shall not so receive the above-mentioned certificate, then the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall be entitled (i) to assume that no such withholding or deduction is required with respect to any payment of principal or interest with respect to any Securities of a series until it shall have received a certificate advising otherwise and (ii) to make all payments of principal and interest with respect to the Securities of a series without withholding or deductions until otherwise advised. The Company covenants to indemnify the Trustee and any Paying Agent for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability or expense reasonably incurred without gross negligence or willful misconduct on their part (as adjudicated by a court of competent jurisdiction in a final non-appealable decision) arising out of or in connection with actions taken or omitted by any of them in reliance on any Officers' Certificate furnished pursuant to this Section or in reliance on the Company's not furnishing such an Officers' Certificate.

SECTION 1005. Statement as to Compliance.

(1) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year ending after the date hereof (which fiscal year ends on February 28 (or February 29 during a leap year)), so long as any Security is Outstanding hereunder, a brief certificate from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company as to his or her knowledge of the Company's compliance with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 1005, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice under this Indenture.

(2) The Company will, so long as any series of Securities are Outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, within 5 Business Days of any officer listed in (1) above becoming aware of any Default, Event of Default or default in the performance of any covenant, agreement or condition contained in this Indenture, an Officers' Certificate specifying such Default, Event of Default, default or event of default and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto and the status thereof.

SECTION 1006. Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or upon the income, profits or property of the Company, and (2) all lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies that, if unpaid, might by law become a lien upon the property of the Company, except where the failure to do so would not be reasonably expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, assets, financial condition or results of operations of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings, but shall establish proper reserves in accordance with GAAP.

SECTION 1007. Waiver of Certain Covenants.

As specified pursuant to Section 301(15), for Securities of any series, the Company may omit in any particular instance to comply with any covenant or condition set forth in any covenants of the Company added to Article Ten pursuant to Section 301(14) or Section 301 (15) in connection with the Securities of a series, if before or after the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of such series, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such covenant or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such covenant or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such covenant or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

SECTION 1008. FATCA.

If a payment made to a Holder under this Indenture would be subject to U.S. withholding tax imposed by FATCA if such Holder were to fail to comply with the applicable reporting requirements of FATCA (including those contained in Section 1471(b) or 1472(b) of the Code, as applicable), such Holder shall deliver to the Company and the Trustee, at the time or times prescribed by law and at such time or times reasonably requested by the Company, such documentation and information prescribed by applicable law (including as prescribed by Section 1471(b)(3)(C)(i) of the Code) and such additional documentation and information reasonably requested by the Company as may be necessary for the Company and the Trustee to comply with its obligations under FATCA, to determine that such Holder has or has not complied with such Holder's obligations under FATCA and to the extent such information has been provided, the Company shall instruct the Trustee as to the amount to be deducted or withheld from such payment. For purposes of this Section 1008, "FATCA" shall include any amendments made to FATCA after the date of this Agreement.

The Company represents, warrants and covenants to the Trustee that, (i) to the best of the Company's knowledge, the Trustee is not obligated in respect of any payments to be made by it pursuant to this Indenture, to make any withholding or deduction pursuant to an agreement described in Section 1471(b) of the Code or otherwise imposed pursuant to Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code and any regulations or agreements thereunder or official interpretations thereof ("FATCA Withholding Tax"); and (ii) the Company will require the Holders to collect and provide any of its FATCA related information ("Holder FATCA Information") to the Company. The Company will provide the Holder FATCA Information to the Trustee upon request and, to the extent the Company determines that FATCA Withholding Tax is applicable, it will promptly notify the Trustee of such fact. The Company shall also notify the Trustee if any Security experiences a "material modification" as defined under FATCA.

ARTICLE ELEVEN

REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1101. Applicability of Article.

Securities of any series that are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any series, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), an Officers' Certificate notifying the Trustee in writing of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed, and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed, and shall deliver to the Trustee such documentation and records as shall enable the Trustee to select the Securities to be redeemed pursuant to Section 1103. In the case of any redemption of Securities of any series prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

SECTION 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed.

If less than all the Securities of any series issued on the same day with the same terms are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee in compliance with the requirements of DTC, from the Outstanding Securities of such series issued on such date with the same terms not previously called for redemption, in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which the Securities are listed (if the Securities are listed on any national securities exchange), or if the Securities are not held through DTC or listed on any national securities exchange, or DTC prescribed no method of selection, on a pro rata basis, or by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and subject to and otherwise in accordance with the procedures of the applicable Depository; provided that such method complies with the rules of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which the Securities are listed, and may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of Securities of such series of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series; provided, however, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security not redeemed to less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company and the Security Registrar (if other than itself) in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

SECTION 1104. Notice of Redemption.

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, unless a shorter period is specified by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, but failure to give such notice in the manner herein provided to the Holder of any Security designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other such Security or portion thereof.

Any notice that is mailed to the Holders of Registered Securities in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the Holder receives the notice.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 1106,
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amount) of the particular Security or Securities to be redeemed,
- (4) in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state that on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the Holder will receive, without a charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed,
- (5) that on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 1106 will become due and payable upon each such Security, or the portion thereof, to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon shall cease to accrue on and after said date,
- (6) the Place or Places of Payment where such Securities, are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any,
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case, and
- (8) the CUSIP or ISIN number of such Security, if any.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by Section 106 need not identify particular Registered Securities to be redeemed. Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company.

SECTION 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or prior to 10:00 am, New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, which it may not do in the case of a sinking fund payment under Article Twelve, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)) sufficient to pay on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price of, and (unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301) accrued interest on, all the Securities or portions thereof which are to be redeemed on that date; provided, however, that to the extent any such funds are received by the Trustee or the Paying Agent from the Company after 10:00 am, New York City time, on the due date, such funds will be deemed deposited within one Business Day of receipt thereof.

SECTION 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)) (together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date), and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any) such Securities shall if the same were interest-bearing cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, installments of interest on Registered Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the Redemption Price shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate of interest set forth in such Security or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, at the Yield to Maturity of such Security.

SECTION 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Registered Security that is to be redeemed only in part (pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Article Twelve) shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or such Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security at the expense of the Company and without service charge a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered. If a temporary global Security or permanent global Security is so surrendered, such new Security so issued shall be a new temporary global Security or permanent global Security, respectively. However, if less than all the Securities of any series with differing issue dates, interest rates and stated maturities are to be redeemed, the Company in its sole discretion shall select the particular Securities to be redeemed and shall notify the Trustee in writing thereof at least 45 days prior to the relevant redemption date.

ARTICLE TWELVE

SINKING FUNDS

SECTION 1201. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of such series.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment", and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities of any series is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment". If provided for by the terms of any Securities of any series, the cash amount of any mandatory sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 1202. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

SECTION 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of a series, (1) deliver Outstanding Securities of such series (other than any previously called for redemption) and (2) apply as a credit Securities of such series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, as provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided that such Securities so delivered or applied as a credit have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the applicable Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such mandatory sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 60 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for Securities of any series, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of that series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)) and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 1202, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered and credited. If such Officers' Certificate shall specify an optional amount to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 1103 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 1104. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 1106 and 1107.

ARTICLE THIRTEEN

REPAYMENT AT THE OPTION OF HOLDERS

SECTION 1301. Applicability of Article.

Repayment of Securities of any series before their Stated Maturity at the option of Holders thereof shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 1302. Repayment of Securities.

Securities of any series subject to repayment in whole or in part at the option of the Holders thereof will, unless otherwise provided in the terms of such Securities, be repaid at the Repayment Price thereof, together with interest, if any, thereon accrued to the Repayment Date specified in or pursuant to the terms of such Securities. The Company covenants that on or before 10:00 am, New York City time, on the Repayment Date it will deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 312(b), 312(d) and 312(e)) sufficient to pay the Repayment Price of, and (unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301) accrued interest on, all the Securities or portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid on such date; provided, however, that to the extent any such funds are received by the Trustee or a Paying Agent from the Company after 10:00 a.m., New York City time, on the due date, such funds will be distributed to the Holders within one Business Day of receipt thereof.

SECTION 1303. Exercise of Option.

Securities of any series subject to repayment at the option of the Holders thereof will contain an "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Securities. To be repaid at the option of the Holder, any Security so providing for such repayment, with the "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Security duly completed by the Holder (or by the Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing), must be received by the Company at the Place of Payment therefor specified in the terms of such Security (or at such other place or places of which the Company shall from time to time notify the Holders of such Securities) not earlier than 45 days nor later than 30 days prior to the Repayment Date. If less than the entire Repayment Price of such Security is to be repaid in accordance with the terms of such Security, the portion of the Repayment Price of such Security to be repaid, in increments of the minimum denomination for Securities of such series, and the denomination or denominations of the Security or Securities to be issued to the Holder for the portion of such Security surrendered that is not to be repaid, must be specified. Any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof may not be repaid in part if, following such repayment, the unpaid principal amount of such Security would be less than the minimum authorized denomination of Securities of the series of which such Security to be repaid is a part. Except as otherwise may be provided by the terms of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof, exercise of the repayment option by the Holder shall be irrevocable unless waived by the Company.

SECTION 1304. When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable.

If Securities of any series providing for repayment at the option of the Holders thereof shall have been surrendered as provided in this Article and as provided by or pursuant to the terms of such Securities, such Securities or the portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid shall become due and payable and shall be paid by the Company on the Repayment Date therein specified, and on and after such Repayment Date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of such Securities on such Repayment Date) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for repayment in accordance with such provisions, the Repayment Price of such Security so to be repaid shall be paid by the Company, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Repayment Date; provided, however, that installments of interest on Registered Securities, whose Stated Maturity is prior to (or, if specified pursuant to Section 301, on) the Repayment Date shall be payable (but without interest thereon, unless the Company shall default in the payment thereof) to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security surrendered for repayment shall not be so repaid upon surrender thereof, the Repayment Price shall, until paid, bear interest from the Repayment Date at the rate of interest set forth in such Security or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, at the Yield to Maturity of such Security.

SECTION 1305. Securities Repaid in Part.

Upon surrender of any Registered Security that is to be repaid in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security, without service charge and at the expense of the Company, a new Registered Security or Securities of the same series, and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination specified by the Holder, in an aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the portion of the principal of such Security so surrendered that is not to be repaid. If a temporary global Security or permanent global Security is so surrendered, such new Security so issued shall be a new temporary global Security or a new permanent global Security, respectively.

ARTICLE FOURTEEN

DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

SECTION 1401. Applicability of Article; Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

If pursuant to Section 301 provision is made for either or both of (a) defeasance of the Securities of or within a series under Section 1402 or (b) covenant defeasance of the Securities of or within a series under Section 1403, then the provisions of such Section or Sections, as the case may be, together with the other provisions of this Article (with such modifications thereto as may be specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to any Securities), shall be applicable to such Securities, and the Company may at its option by Board Resolution, at any time, with respect to such Securities, elect to have either Section 1402 (if applicable) or Section 1403 (if applicable) be applied to such Outstanding Securities upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article.

SECTION 1402. Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Outstanding Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1404 are satisfied (hereinafter, "defeasance"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Outstanding Securities, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of Section 1405 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (A) and (B) of this Section, and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of such Outstanding Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 1404 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Securities when such payments are due, (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 305, 306, 1002 and 1003 and with respect to the payment of Additional Amounts, if any, on such Securities as contemplated by Section 1004, (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and (D) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article Fourteen, the Company may exercise its option under this Section notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 1403 with respect to such Securities. Following a defeasance, payment of such Securities may not be accelerated because of an Event of Default.

SECTION 1403. Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section with respect to any Securities of or within a series, if specified pursuant to Section 301, the Company shall be released from its obligations under any covenant, with respect to such Outstanding Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1404 are satisfied (hereinafter, "covenant defeasance"), and such Securities shall thereafter be deemed to be not "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenant, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that, with respect to such Outstanding Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or such other covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or such other covenant or by reason of reference in any such Section or such other covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under Section 501(4) or 501(8) or otherwise, as the case may be, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby. Following a covenant defeasance, payment of such Securities may not be accelerated because of an Event of Default solely by reference to such Sections specified above in this Section 1403.

SECTION 1404. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The following shall be the conditions to application of either Section 1402 or Section 1403 to any Outstanding Securities of or within a series:

(a) The Company shall have irrevocably deposited or caused to be irrevocably deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 607 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Fourteen applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for the benefit of, and dedicated solely to, the Holders of such Securities, (1) an amount (in such Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity), or (2) Government Obligations applicable to such Securities (determined on the basis of the Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity) which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Securities, money in an amount, or (3) a combination thereof in an amount, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, (i) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Outstanding Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest and (ii) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Outstanding Securities on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities.

(b) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound.

(c) No Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or, insofar as Sections 501(5) and 501(6) are concerned, at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).

(d) In the case of an election under Section 1402, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (i) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (ii) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders and the beneficial owners of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred.

(e) In the case of an election under Section 1403, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders and the beneficial owners of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.

(f) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to either the defeasance under Section 1402 or the covenant defeasance under Section 1403 (as the case may be) have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that as a result of a deposit pursuant to subsection (a) above and the related exercise of the Company's option under Section 1402 or Section 1403 (as the case may be), registration is not required under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, by the Company, with respect to the trust funds representing such deposit or by the trustee for such trust funds.

(g) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section, such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations which may be imposed on the Company in connection therewith pursuant to Section 301.

SECTION 1405. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 301) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee, collectively for purposes of this Section 1405, the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 1404 in respect of any Outstanding Securities of any series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Security pursuant to Section 301, if, after a deposit referred to in Section 1404(a) has been made, (a) the Holder of a Security in respect of which such deposit was made is entitled to, and does, elect pursuant to Section 312(b) or the terms of such Security to receive payment in a Currency other than that in which the deposit pursuant to Section 1404(a) has been made in respect of such Security, or (b) a Conversion Event occurs as contemplated in Section 312(d) or 312(e) or by the terms of any Security in respect of which the deposit pursuant to Section 1404(a) has been made, the indebtedness represented by such Security shall be deemed to have been, and will be, fully discharged and satisfied through the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Security as the same becomes due out of the proceeds yielded by converting (from time to time as specified below in the case of any such election) the amount or other property deposited in respect of such Security into the Currency in which such Security becomes payable as a result of such election or Conversion Event based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect on the second Business Day prior to each payment date, except, with respect to a Conversion Event, such conversion shall be based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect (as nearly as feasible) at the time of the Conversion Event.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the money or Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 1404 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders or the beneficial owners of such Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in Section 1404 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect a defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Article.

ARTICLE FIFTEEN

MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1501. Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.

A meeting of Holders of any series of Securities may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

SECTION 1502. Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.

(a) The Trustee may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purpose specified in Section 1501, to be held at such time and at such place in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York as the Trustee shall determine. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

(b) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustee to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in Section 1501, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have made the first publication or mailing of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in subsection (a) of this Section.

SECTION 1503. Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series by such Holder or Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

SECTION 1504. Quorum; Action.

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; provided, however, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of not less than a specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 1502(a), except that such notice need be given only once not less than 5 days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.

Except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; provided, however, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution with respect to any consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 1504, if any action is to be taken at a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series with respect to any consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected thereby, or of the Holders of such series and one or more additional series:

- (i) there shall be no minimum quorum requirement for such meeting; and
- (ii) the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series that vote in favor of such consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action shall be taken into account in determining whether such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action has been made, given or taken under this Indenture.

SECTION 1505. Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104 and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in Section 104 or other proof.

(b) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in Section 1502(b), in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.

(c) At any meeting of Holders, each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by such Holder; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or proxy.

(d) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to Section 1502 at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting, and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

SECTION 1506. Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the fact, setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 1502 and, if applicable, Section 1504. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

ARTICLE SIXTEEN

SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 1601. Agreement to Subordinate.

The Company, for itself, its successors and assigns, covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Subordinated Securities by his acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on each and all of the Subordinated Securities is hereby expressly subordinated, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness.

SECTION 1602. Distribution on Dissolution, Liquidation and Reorganization; Subrogation of Subordinated Securities.

Upon any distribution of assets of the Company upon any dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization of the Company, whether in bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or receivership proceedings or upon an assignment for the benefit of creditors or any other marshalling of the assets and liabilities of the Company or otherwise (subject to the power of a court of competent jurisdiction to make other equitable provision reflecting the rights conferred in this Indenture upon the Senior Indebtedness and the holders thereof with respect to the Securities and the holders thereof by a lawful plan of reorganization under applicable bankruptcy law):

(a) the holders of all Senior Indebtedness shall be entitled to receive payment in full of the principal thereof (and premium, if any) and interest due thereon (including post-petition interest) before the Holders of the Subordinated Securities are entitled to receive any payment upon the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on indebtedness evidenced by the Subordinated Securities; and

(b) any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article Sixteen shall be paid by the liquidating trustee or agent or other person making such payment or distribution, whether a trustee in bankruptcy, a receiver or liquidating trustee or otherwise, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness or their representative or representatives or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture under which any instruments evidencing any of such Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, ratably according to the aggregate amounts remaining unpaid on account of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Senior Indebtedness held or represented by each, to the extent necessary to make payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness; and

(c) in the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, shall be received by the Trustee or the Holders of the Subordinated Securities before all Senior Indebtedness is paid in full, such payment or distribution shall be paid over, upon written notice to the Trustee, to the holder of such Senior Indebtedness or their representative or representatives or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture under which any instrument evidencing any of such Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, ratably as aforesaid, for application to payment of all Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid until all such Senior Indebtedness shall have been paid in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, the Holders of the Subordinated Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Company applicable to Senior Indebtedness until the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities shall be paid in full and no such payments or distributions to the Holders of the Subordinated Securities of cash, property or securities otherwise distributable to the holders of Senior Indebtedness shall, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of the Subordinated Securities be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or on account of the Subordinated Securities. It is understood that the provisions of this Article Sixteen are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the Holders of the Subordinated Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness, on the other hand. Nothing contained in this Article Sixteen or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Subordinated Securities is intended to or shall impair, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of the Subordinated Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is unconditional and absolute, to pay to the Holders of the Subordinated Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or to affect the relative rights of the Holders of the Subordinated Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or in the Subordinated Securities prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Subordinated Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article Sixteen of the holders of Senior Indebtedness in respect of cash, property or securities of the Company received upon the exercise of any such remedy. Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article Sixteen, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 601, shall be entitled to rely upon a certificate of the liquidating trustee or agent or other person making any distribution to the Trustee for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article Sixteen.

If the Trustee or any Holder of Subordinated Securities does not file a proper claim or proof of debt in the form required in any proceeding under any Bankruptcy Law prior to 30 days before the expiration of the time to file such claim in such proceeding, then the holder of any Senior Indebtedness is hereby authorized, and has the right, to file an appropriate claim or claims for or on behalf of such Holder of Subordinated Securities.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants or obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to holders of Senior Indebtedness shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee does not owe any fiduciary duties to the holders of Senior Indebtedness other than Securities issued under this Indenture.

SECTION 1603. No Payment on Subordinated Securities in Event of Default on Senior Indebtedness.

No payment by the Company on account of principal (or premium, if any), sinking funds or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities shall be made unless full payment of amounts then due for principal (premium, if any), sinking funds and interest on Senior Indebtedness has been made or duly provided for in money or money's worth.

SECTION 1604. Payments on Subordinated Securities Permitted.

Nothing contained in this Indenture or in any of the Subordinated Securities shall (a) affect the obligation of the Company to make, or prevent the Company from making, at any time except as provided in Sections 1602 and 1603, payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities, (b) without limiting clause (c) of this sentence, prevent the application by the Trustee of any moneys deposited with it hereunder to the payment of or on account of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities, unless the Trustee shall have received at its Corporate Trust Office written notice of any event prohibiting the making of such payment more than three Business Days prior to the date fixed for such payment or (c) prevent the application by the Trustee of any moneys or the proceeds of Government Obligations deposited with it pursuant to Section 1404(a) to the payment of or on account of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities if all the conditions specified in Section 1404 to the application of Section 1402 or Section 1403, as applicable, have been satisfied prior to the date the Trustee shall have received at its Corporate Trust Office written notice of any event prohibiting the making of such payment.

SECTION 1605. Authorization of Holders to Trustee to Effect Subordination.

Each Holder of Subordinated Securities by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination as provided in this Article Sixteen and appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

SECTION 1606. Notices to Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article or any other provisions of this Indenture, neither the Trustee nor any Paying Agent (other than the Company) shall be charged with knowledge of the existence of any Senior Indebtedness or of any event that would prohibit the making of any payment of moneys to or by the Trustee or such Paying Agent, unless and until the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall have received (in the case of the Trustee, at its Corporate Trust Office) written notice thereof from the Company or from the holder of any Senior Indebtedness or from the trustee for any such holder, together with proof satisfactory to the Trustee of such holding of Senior Indebtedness or of the authority of such trustee; provided, however, that if at least three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such moneys may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of either the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Subordinated Security) the Trustee shall not have received with respect to such moneys the notice provided for in this Section 1606, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such moneys and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary, which may be received by it within three Business Days prior to such date. The Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness (or a trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such a notice has been given by a holder of Senior Indebtedness or a trustee on behalf of any such holder. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article Sixteen, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article Sixteen and, if such evidence is not furnished, the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

SECTION 1607. Trustee as Holder of Senior Indebtedness.

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article Sixteen in respect of any Senior Indebtedness at any time held by it to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness and nothing in this Indenture shall be construed to deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

Nothing in this Article Sixteen shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 606.

SECTION 1608. Modifications of Terms of Senior Indebtedness.

Any renewal or extension of the time of payment of any Senior Indebtedness or the exercise by the holders of Senior Indebtedness of any of their rights under any instrument creating or evidencing Senior Indebtedness, including, without limitation, the waiver of default thereunder, may be made or done all without notice to or assent from the Holders of the Subordinated Securities or the Trustee.

No compromise, alteration, amendment, modification, extension, renewal or other change of, or waiver, consent or other action in respect of, any liability or obligation under or in respect of, or of any of the terms, covenants or conditions of any indenture or other instrument under which any Senior Indebtedness is outstanding or of such Senior Indebtedness, whether or not any of the foregoing are in accordance with the provisions of any applicable document, shall in any way alter or affect any of the provisions of this Article Sixteen or of the Subordinated Securities relating to the subordination thereof.

SECTION 1609. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article Sixteen, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree entered by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such insolvency, bankruptcy, receivership, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution, winding up or similar case or proceeding is pending, or a certificate of the trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, custodian, receiver, assignee for the benefit of creditors, agent or other person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of Subordinated Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the persons entitled to participate in such payment or distribution, the holders of Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article Sixteen.

* * * * *

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same Indenture. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and delivery of signature pages by facsimile, .pdf transmission, e-mail or other electronic means shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile, .pdf transmission, e-mail or other electronic means shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, as of the day and year first above written.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
as Trustee

By: _____
Name:
Title:

[Signature Page to Indenture]

FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE

between

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

as Trustee

Dated as of June [•], 2020

FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE

THIS FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE (this “First Supplemental Indenture”), dated as of [•], 2020, is between Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “Trustee”). All capitalized terms used herein shall have the meaning set forth in the Base Indenture (as defined below).

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company and the Trustee executed and delivered an Indenture, dated as of [•], 2020 (the “Base Indenture” and, as supplemented by this First Supplemental Indenture, the “Indenture”), to provide for the issuance by the Company from time to time of the Company’s unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (the “Securities”), to be issued in one or more series as provided in the Indenture.

The Company desires to issue and sell up to \$[•],000,000 aggregate principal amount (or up to \$[•],000,000 aggregate principal amount if the underwriters’ option to purchase additional Securities is exercised in full) of the Company’s [•]% Notes due June [•], 2025 (the “Notes”).

Sections 901(4) and 901(6) of the Base Indenture provide that without the consent of Holders of the Securities of any series issued under the Indenture, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental to the Base Indenture to (i) change or eliminate any of the provisions of the Base Indenture when there is no Security Outstanding of any series created prior to the execution of the supplemental indenture that is entitled to the benefit of such provision and (ii) establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Section 201 and Section 301 of the Base Indenture.

The Company desires to establish the form and terms of the Notes and to modify, alter, supplement and change certain provisions of the Base Indenture for the benefit of the Holders of the Notes (except as may be provided in a future supplemental indenture to the Base Indenture (“Future Supplemental Indenture”).

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this First Supplemental Indenture to provide for the issuance of the Notes and all acts and things necessary to make this First Supplemental Indenture a valid, binding, and legal obligation of the Company and to constitute a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done and performed.

NOW, THEREFORE, for and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Notes by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Notes, as follows:

ARTICLE I.
TERMS OF THE NOTES

Section 1.01. Terms of the Notes. The following terms relating to the Notes are hereby established:

(a) The Notes shall constitute a series of Senior Securities having the title “[•]% Notes due June [•], 2025.” The Notes shall bear a CUSIP number of [•] and an ISIN of [•].

(b) (b) The aggregate principal amount of the Notes that may be initially authenticated and delivered under the Indenture (except for Notes authenticated and delivered upon registration of, transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Notes pursuant to Sections 304, 305, 306, 906, 1107 or 1305 of the Base Indenture, and except for any Securities that, pursuant to Section 303 of the Base Indenture, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered under the Indenture) shall be up to \$[•],000,000 (or up to \$[•],000,000 aggregate principal amount if the underwriters’ option to purchase additional Securities is exercised in full). Under a Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate pursuant to Board Resolutions or an indenture supplement, the Company may from time to time, without the consent of the Holders of Notes, issue additional Notes (in any such case “Additional Notes”) having the same ranking and the same interest rate, maturity and other terms as the Notes. Any Additional Notes and the existing Notes will constitute a single series under the Indenture and all references to the relevant Notes herein shall include the Additional Notes unless the context otherwise requires.

(c) The entire outstanding principal of the Notes shall be payable on June [•], 2025, unless earlier redeemed or repurchased in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture.

(d) The rate at which the Notes shall bear interest shall be [•]% per annum. The Interest Payment Dates for the Notes shall be March 30, June 30, September 30 and December 30 of each year, commencing September 30, 2020 (if an Interest Payment Date falls on a day that is not a Business Day, then the applicable interest payment will be made on the next succeeding Business Day and no additional interest will accrue as a result of such delayed payment). The initial interest period will be the period from and including [•], 2020, to, but excluding, September 30, 2020, and the subsequent interest periods will be the periods from and including an Interest Payment Date to, but excluding, the next Interest Payment Date or the Stated Maturity, as the case may be; the interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date, will be paid to the Person in whose name the Note (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be March 15, June 15, September 15, or December 15 (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, immediately preceding such Interest Payment Date. Payment of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and any such interest on the Notes will be made at the office of the Trustee located at 111 Fillmore Avenue, St. Paul, MN 55107, Attention: Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. ([•]% Notes Due June [•], 2025) ([Karen R. Beard], Vice President) or at such other address as designated by the Trustee, in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; *provided, however*, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register; *provided, further, however*, that so long as the Notes are registered to Cede & Co., such payment will be made by wire transfer in accordance with the procedures established by The Depository Trust Company and the Trustee. Interest on the Notes will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

(e) The Notes shall be initially issuable in global form (each such Note, a “Global Note”). The Global Notes and the Trustee’s certificate of authentication thereon shall be substantially in the form of Exhibit A to this First Supplemental Indenture. Each Global Note shall represent the outstanding Notes as shall be specified therein and each shall provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of outstanding Notes from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of outstanding Notes represented thereby may from time to time be reduced or increased, as appropriate, to reflect exchanges and redemptions. Any endorsement of a Global Note to reflect the amount of any increase or decrease in the amount of outstanding Notes represented thereby shall be made by the Trustee or the Security Registrar, in accordance with Sections 203 and 305 of the Base Indenture.

(f) The depository for such Global Notes (the “Depository”) shall be The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York. The Security Registrar with respect to the Global Notes shall be the Trustee.

(g) The Notes shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 1402 or Section 1403 of the Base Indenture. Covenant defeasance contained in Section 1403 of the Base Indenture shall apply to the covenants contained in Sections 1006, 1008 and 1009 of the Indenture.

(h) The Notes shall be redeemable pursuant to Section 1101 of the Base Indenture and as follows:

(i) The Notes will be redeemable in whole or in part at any time or from time to time, at the option of the Company, on or after June [•], 2022, at a redemption price equal to 100% of the outstanding principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest payments otherwise payable for the then-current quarterly interest period accrued to, but excluding, the date fixed for redemption. In addition, in the event of a merger or sale of the Company or substantially all of its assets or a majority of the Company's equity (on an after issued basis) in one or a series of related transactions, the company shall have the right to redeem the Notes prior to [•], 2022 in connection with the consummation of such transactions on the terms forth herein.

(ii) Notice of redemption shall be given in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid or by overnight courier guaranteeing next-day delivery, to each Holder of the Notes to be redeemed, not less than thirty (30) nor more than sixty (60) days prior to the Redemption Date, at the Holder's address appearing in the Security Register. All notices of redemption shall contain the information set forth in Section 1104 of the Base Indenture.

(iii) If the Company elects to redeem only a portion of the Notes, the Trustee will determine the method for selecting the particular Notes to be redeemed, in accordance with Section 1103 of the Base Indenture and the Investment Company Act and the rules of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which the Notes are listed, in each case to the extent applicable.

(iv) Unless the Company defaults in payment of the Redemption Price, on and after the Redemption Date, interest will cease to accrue on the Notes called for redemption.

(i) The Notes shall not be subject to any sinking fund pursuant to Section 1201 of the Base Indenture.

(j) The Notes shall be issuable in denominations of \$25 and integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof.

(k) Holders of the Notes will not have the option to have the Notes repaid prior to the Stated Maturity.

(l) The Notes are hereby designated as "Senior Securities" under the Indenture.

ARTICLE II. COVENANTS

Section 2.01. Except as may be provided in a Future Supplemental Indenture, for the benefit of the Holders of the Notes but no other series of Securities under the Indenture, whether now or hereafter issued and Outstanding, Article Ten of the Base Indenture shall be amended by adding the following new Sections 1009, and 1010 thereto, each as set forth below:

"Section 1009. Dividend Payment and Other Payment Restrictions.

The Company hereby agrees that for the period of time during which Notes are Outstanding, upon (i) the failure to pay interest on any Note when such interest is due and payable or (ii) the occurrence of an Event of Default and while any such interest payment remains unpaid or such Event of Default is ongoing, the Company will not, and will not permit any of its Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly to:

(1) declare or pay any dividend, make any distribution on or in respect of the Company's capital stock or make any similar payment to the direct or indirect holders of the Company's capital stock in their capacity as such;

- (2) purchase, repurchase, redeem, retire or otherwise acquire (“Purchase”) for value any capital stock of the Company held by any Person (other than capital stock held by the Company or a Subsidiary) or any capital stock of a Subsidiary held by any Affiliate of the Company;
- (3) purchase for value, prior to scheduled maturity, any scheduled repayment of any Subordinated Indebtedness; or
- (4) make any investment in any Person.”

**ARTICLE III.
MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES**

Section 3.01. Except as may be provided in a Future Supplemental Indenture, for the benefit of the Holders of the Notes but no other series of Securities under the Indenture, whether now or hereafter issued and Outstanding, Section 1505 of the Base Indenture shall be amended by replacing clause (c) thereof with the following:

“(c) At any meeting of Holders, each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$25.00 principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by such Holder; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or proxy.”

**ARTICLE IV.
MISCELLANEOUS**

Section 4.01. This First Supplemental Indenture and the Notes shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York, without regard to principles of conflicts of laws. This First Supplemental Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of the Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

Section 4.02. In case any provision in this First Supplemental Indenture or in the Notes shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 4.03. This First Supplemental Indenture may be executed in counterparts, each of which will be an original, but such counterparts will together constitute but one and the same First Supplemental Indenture. The exchange of copies of this First Supplemental Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile, .pdf transmission, email or other electronic means shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this First Supplemental Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile, .pdf transmission, email or other electronic means shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

Section 4.04. The Base Indenture, as supplemented and amended by this First Supplemental Indenture, is in all respects ratified and confirmed, and the Base Indenture and this First Supplemental Indenture shall be read, taken and construed as one and the same instrument with respect to the Notes. All provisions included in this First Supplemental Indenture supersede any conflicting provisions included in the Base Indenture with respect to the Notes, unless not permitted by law. The Trustee accepts the trusts created by the Base Indenture, as supplemented by this First Supplemental Indenture, and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions of the Base Indenture, as supplemented by this First Supplemental Indenture.

Section 4.05. The provisions of this First Supplemental Indenture shall become effective as of the date hereof.

Section 4.06. Notwithstanding anything else to the contrary herein, the terms and provisions of this First Supplemental Indenture shall apply only to the Notes and shall not apply to any other series of Securities under the Base Indenture and this First Supplemental Indenture shall not and does not otherwise affect, modify, alter, supplement or change the terms and provisions of any other series of Securities under the Base Indenture, whether now or hereafter issued and Outstanding.

Section 4.07. The recitals contained herein and in the Notes shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this First Supplemental Indenture, the Notes or any Additional Notes, except that the Trustee represents that it is duly authorized to execute and deliver this First Supplemental Indenture, authenticate the Notes and any Additional Notes and perform its obligations hereunder. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of the Notes or any Additional Notes or the proceeds thereof. For the avoidance of doubt, the Trustee shall be entitled to the rights, authority, privileges, and immunities it receives under the Base Indenture, including, without limitation, its rights to be indemnified, in connection with its entering into and performing the obligations imposed by this First Supplemental Indenture.

[REMAINDER OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this First Supplemental Indenture to be duly executed as of the date first above written.

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Trustee

By: _____
Name:
Title:

[Signature page to First Supplemental Indenture]

Exhibit A – Form of Global Note

This Security is a Global Security within the meaning of the Indenture hereinafter referred to and is registered in the name of The Depository Trust Company or a nominee thereof. This Security may not be exchanged in whole or in part for a Security registered, and no transfer of this Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than The Depository Trust Company or a nominee thereof, except in the limited circumstances described in the Indenture.

Unless this certificate is presented by an authorized representative of The Depository Trust Company to the issuer or its agent for registration of transfer, exchange or payment and such certificate issued in exchange for this certificate is registered in the name of Cede & Co., or such other name as requested by an authorized representative of The Depository Trust Company, any transfer, pledge or other use hereof for value or otherwise by or to any person is wrongful, as the registered owner hereof, Cede & Co., has an interest herein.

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.

No.

\$
CUSIP No.: [•]
ISIN: [•]

[•]% Notes due June [•], 20[•]

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of Delaware (herein called the “Company”, which term includes any successor Person under the Indenture hereinafter referred to), for value received, hereby promises to pay to Cede & Co., or registered assigns, the principal sum of _____ Dollars (U.S. \$ _____) on June [•], 20[•] and to pay interest thereon from [•], 2020 or from the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or duly provided for, quarterly on March 30, June 30, September 30 and December 30 in each year, commencing September 30, 2020, at the rate of [•]% per annum, until the principal hereof is paid or made available for payment. The interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date will, as provided in such Indenture, be paid to the Person in whose name this Security is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be March 15, June 15, September 15, or December 15 (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, immediately preceding such Interest Payment Date. Any such interest not so punctually paid or duly provided for will forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on such Regular Record Date and may either be paid to the Person in whose name this Security is registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest to be fixed by the Trustee, notice whereof shall be given to Holders of Securities of this series not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date, or be paid at any time in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which the Securities of this series may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, all as more fully provided in said Indenture. This Security may be issued as part of a series.

Payment of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and any such interest on this Security will be made at the office of the Trustee located at 111 Fillmore Avenue, St. Paul, MN55107, Attention: [•] ([•]% Notes Due June [___], 20[•]) or at such other address as designated by the Trustee, in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; *provided, however*, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register; *provided, further, however*, that so long as this Security is registered to Cede & Co., such payment will be made by wire transfer in accordance with the procedures established by The Depository Trust Company and the Trustee.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Security set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee referred to on the reverse hereof by manual signature, this Security

shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be duly executed.

Dated:

CHICKEN SOUP FOR THE SOUL ENTERTAINMENT, INC.

By:

Name:

Title:

Attest

By:

Name:

Title:

[Global Note – First Supplemental Indenture]

CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

Dated:

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Trustee

By:

Authorized Signatory

[Global Note – First Supplemental Indenture]

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.

[•]% Notes due June [•], 20[•]

This Security is one of a duly authorized issue of Senior Securities of the Company (herein called the “Securities”), issued and to be issued in one or more series under an Indenture, dated as of June [•], 2020 (herein called the “Base Indenture”, which term shall have the meaning assigned to it in such instrument), between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee (herein called the “Trustee”, which term includes any successor trustee under the Base Indenture), and reference is hereby made to the Base Indenture for a statement of the respective rights, limitations of rights, duties and immunities thereunder of the Company, the Trustee, and the Holders of the Securities and of the terms upon which the Securities are, and are to be, authenticated and delivered, as supplemented by the First Supplemental Indenture relating to the Securities, dated as of June [•], 2020, by and between the Company and the Trustee (herein called the “First Supplemental Indenture”; the First Supplemental Indenture and the Base Indenture collectively are herein called the “Indenture”). In the event of any conflict between the Base Indenture and the First Supplemental Indenture, the First Supplemental Indenture shall govern and control.

This Security is one of the series designated on the face hereof, which series is initially limited in aggregate principal amount to \$. Under a Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate pursuant to Board Resolutions or an indenture supplement, the Company may from time to time, without the consent of the Holders of Securities, issue additional Securities of this series (in any such case “Additional Securities”) having the same ranking and the same interest rate, maturity and other terms as the Securities. Any Additional Securities and the existing Securities will constitute a single series under the Indenture and all references to the relevant Securities herein shall include the Additional Securities unless the context otherwise requires. The aggregate amount of outstanding Securities represented hereby may from time to time be reduced or increased, as appropriate, to reflect exchanges and redemptions.

The Securities of this series are subject to redemption in whole or in part at any time or from time to time, at the option of the Company, on or after June [•], 2022, at a redemption price per security equal to 100% of the outstanding principal amount thereof plus accrued and unpaid interest payments otherwise payable for the then-current quarterly interest period accrued to, but excluding, the date fixed for redemption.

Notice of redemption shall be given in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid or by overnight courier guaranteeing next-day delivery, to each Holder of the Securities to be redeemed, not less than thirty (30) nor more than sixty (60) days prior to the Redemption Date, at the Holder’s address appearing in the Security Register. All notices of redemption shall contain the information set forth in Section 1104 of the Base Indenture.

If the Company elects to redeem only a portion of the Securities, the Trustee will determine the method for selecting the particular Securities to be redeemed, in accordance with Section 1.01 of the First Supplemental Indenture and Section 1103 of the Base Indenture. In the event of redemption of this Security in part only, a new Security or Securities of this series and of like tenor for the unredeemed portion hereof will be issued in the name of the Holder hereof upon the cancellation hereof.

Unless the Company defaults in payment of the Redemption Price, on and after the Redemption Date, interest will cease to accrue on the Securities called for redemption.

Holders of Securities do not have the option to have the Securities repaid prior to June [•], 20[•].

The Indenture contains provisions for defeasance at any time of the entire indebtedness of this Security or certain restrictive covenants and Events of Default with respect to this Security, in each case upon compliance with certain conditions set forth in the Indenture.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, the principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture.

The Indenture permits, with certain exceptions as therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Company and the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each series to be affected under the Indenture at any time by the Company and the Trustee with the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of each series to be affected. The Indenture also contains provisions permitting the Holders of specified percentages in principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time Outstanding, on behalf of the Holders of all Securities of such series, to waive compliance by the Company with certain provisions of the Indenture and certain past defaults under the Indenture and their consequences. Any such consent or waiver by the Holder of this Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders of this Security and of any Security issued upon the registration of transfer hereof or in exchange herefor or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent or waiver is made upon this Security.

As provided in and subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder of this Security shall not have the right to institute any proceeding with respect to the Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee or for any other remedy thereunder, unless such Holder shall have previously given the Trustee written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of this series, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of this series at the time Outstanding shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default as Trustee and offered the Trustee indemnity, security, or both satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request, and the Trustee shall not have received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of Securities of this series at the time Outstanding a direction inconsistent with such request, and shall have failed to institute any such proceeding, for sixty (60) days after receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity and/or security. The foregoing shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Holder of this Security for the enforcement of any payment of principal hereof or any premium or interest hereon on or after the respective due dates expressed herein.

No reference herein to the Indenture and no provision of this Security or of the Indenture shall alter or impair the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security at the times, place and rate, and in the coin or currency, herein prescribed.

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Security is registrable in the Security Register, upon surrender of this Security for registration of transfer at the office or agency of the Company in any place where the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security are payable, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed by, the Holder hereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Securities of this series and of like tenor, of authorized denominations and for the same aggregate principal amount, will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Securities of this series are issuable only in registered form without coupons in denominations of \$25 and any integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Securities of this series are exchangeable for a like aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series and of like tenor of a different authorized denomination, as requested by the Holder surrendering the same.

No service charge shall be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Company, the Trustee, or the Security Registrar may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

Prior to due presentment of this Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee, or the Security Registrar and any agent of the Company, the Trustee, or the Security Registrar may treat the Person in whose name this Security is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, whether or not this Security be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar or any agent thereof shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

All terms used in this Security which are defined in the Indenture shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Indenture.

The Indenture and this Security shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without regard to principles of conflicts of laws.

To the extent any provision of this Security conflicts with the express provisions of the Indenture, the provisions of the Indenture shall govern and be controlling.

GRAUBARD MILLER
The Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10174

June 15, 2020

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc.
132 E. Putnam Avenue, Floor 2W
Cos Cob, Connecticut 06807

Re: Registration Statement

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment Inc., a Delaware corporation ("Company"), in connection with the preparation of the Registration Statement on Form S-1 ("Registration Statement") filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), including the prospectus that forms a part of the Registration Statement ("Prospectus") relating to the sale by the Company, pursuant to that certain Underwriting Agreement between the Company and Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc., as representative of the several underwriters listed in Schedule I to the Underwriting Agreement (the "Underwriters"), of up to \$25,000,000 aggregate principal amount of [*]% Notes due 2025 (the "Firm Notes") and an additional \$3,750,000 aggregate principal amount of [*]% Notes due 2025 ("Additional Notes"), which may be sold to the Underwriters solely to cover overallocments, if any. The Firm Notes and, if and to the extent the overallocation option is exercised, the Additional Notes, are collectively referred to as the "Notes". The Notes will be issued under an indenture (the "Base Indenture"), to be entered into between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee ("Trustee"), as will be supplemented by the Supplemental Indenture ("Supplemental Indenture", and together with the Base Indenture, the "Indenture").

In rendering the opinions set forth below, we have examined (a) the Registration Statement and the exhibits thereto; (b) the Prospectus, (c) the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, as amended ("Certificate of Incorporation"); (d) the Company's Bylaws ("Bylaws"); (e) certain records of the Company's corporate proceedings as reflected in its minute books; (f) the form of Underwriting Agreement filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, (g) the forms of Base Indenture and Supplemental Indenture filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement, and (h) such statutes, records and other documents as we have deemed relevant.

In our examination, we have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, and conformity with the originals of all documents submitted to us as copies thereof. In making our examination of the documents executed or to be executed, we have assumed that the parties thereto (other than the Company) had or will have the power, corporate or other, to enter into and perform all obligations thereunder and have also assumed the due authorization by all requisite action, corporate or other, and execution and delivery by such parties of such documents and the validity and binding effect thereof on such parties.

In rendering our opinions below, we have also assumed that (i) the Registration Statement shall be effective and comply with all applicable laws at any time the Notes are offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement, (ii) the Trustee is and has been duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of organization and is duly qualified to engage in the activities contemplated by the Indenture; (iii) the Indenture has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by, and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of, the Trustee, enforceable against the Trustee in accordance with its terms; (iv) the Trustee is in compliance, generally and with respect to acting as a trustee under the Indenture, with all applicable laws and regulations; (v) the Trustee had and has the requisite organizational and legal power and authority to perform its obligations under the Indenture; and (vi) the Notes will be duly authenticated by the Trustee in the manner provided in the Indenture.

Based upon and subject to the foregoing, we are of the opinion that the Notes, when executed by the Company and authenticated by the Trustee in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture and delivered and paid for as provided in the Underwriting Agreement, will be the legal, valid, and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

Our opinion that any document constitutes a binding obligation is qualified by reference to (i) the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting the rights of creditors generally, including, without limitation, laws relating to fraudulent transfers or conveyances, preferences and equitable subordination; and (ii) limitations imposed by general principles of equity, including without limitation concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing and the possible unavailability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies regardless of whether enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law.

No opinion is expressed herein other than as to the corporate law of the State of Delaware, the laws of the State of New York, and the federal securities law of the United States of America.

We hereby consent to the use of this opinion as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement, to the use of our name as counsel to the Company, and to all references made to us in the Registration Statement and the prospectuses forming a part thereof. In giving this consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Act, or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ GRAUBARD MILLER

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement on Form S-1 and related prospectus of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. and Subsidiaries of our report dated March 27, 2020 relating to the December 31, 2019 and 2018 consolidated financial statements of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. and Subsidiaries included in its Annual Report (Form 10-K), and to the reference to us under the heading "Experts" in the Registration Statement.

/s/ ROSENFELD AND COMPANY, PLLC

New York, New York
June 12, 2020

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT AUDITORS

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement on Form S-1 of Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. of our report dated July 30, 2019 relating to the financial statements of Crackle U.S. (a business of Sony Pictures Entertainment), which appears in Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K/A dated July 30, 2019. We also consent to the reference to us under the heading "Experts" in such Registration Statement.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP

Los Angeles, CA

June 15, 2020

UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL INFORMATION

On May 14, 2019, Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc. a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), or “us”, “our” or similar terms) consummated (the “Closing”) the creation of a joint venture entity to be known as “*Crackle Plus*” (the “Crackle Transaction”), contemplated by the previously announced Contribution Agreement, dated as of March 27, 2019 (the “Contribution Agreement”) by and among the Company, Crackle Plus, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “JV Entity”), CPE Holdings, Inc. (“CPEH”), a Delaware corporation and affiliate of Sony Pictures Television Inc. (“Sony”), and Crackle, Inc., a Delaware corporation and wholly owned subsidiary of CPEH (“Crackle” or “Crackle U.S.”). The Contribution Agreement provides, among other things, for the creation of a new streaming video joint venture to be known as “*Crackle Plus*” and for the contribution by CPEH and its affiliates of certain U.S. and Canadian assets of the *Crackle* branded advertising-based video on demand streaming business to the JV Entity and for the contribution by the Company and its affiliates of certain assets of their advertising-based and subscription-based video on demand businesses to the JV Entity.

The following unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information was prepared using the acquisition method of accounting (ASC 805 “*Business Combinations*”), with the Company considered the acquirer of Crackle U.S.

We are providing this unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations of the Company for the year ended December 31, 2019 in accordance with Article 11 of Regulation S-X as an update to the unaudited condensed combined statements of operations of the Company for the quarter ended March 31, 2019 and for the year ended December 31, 2018, which were included in Exhibit 99.2 to the Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) on July 30, 2019. This updated unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations shows the pro forma effect of the Crackle transaction for the year ended December 31, 2019, as if the transaction had been completed on January 1, 2018, consistent with the initial unaudited pro forma condensed combined statements of operations previously filed.

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information included herein presents the combination of the historical consolidated statement of operations of the Company and carve-out statement of operations of Crackle U.S. adjusted to give effect to events and circumstances that are (i) directly attributable to the acquisition, (ii) factually supportable and (iii) expected to have a continuing impact on the combined company’s results. Specifically, at the time of the consummation of the business combination, the Company changed the way that Crackle operates by identifying four key areas to reduce costs and improve margins; technology, marketing, content and SG&A. Directly attributable pro forma adjustments consist of:

- The Company worked with Sony to consolidate technology costs onto Sony’s shared platform.
 - Upon creation of the JV Entity, technology costs were reduced significantly.
 - Marketing spend was also significantly reduced as the Company excluded Sony’s marketing agreements from transferred assets and will use its owned-and-operated networks and brand related social media to drive growth through cross-promotion.
 - Fixed fee content agreements were replaced with revenue sharing agreements between Crackle Plus, the Company and Sony.
 - Duplicative roles within the Company’s and Crackle’s operations teams were evaluated, and staff was reduced to streamline operations.
-

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information should be read in conjunction with the Company's audited historical consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2019, which were filed with the SEC as part of our Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 30, 2020, and the audited historical carve-out financial statements as of and for the years ended March 31, 2019 and 2018 of Crackle U.S., which were filed with the SEC as Exhibit 99.1 to the Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on July 30, 2019.

In management's opinion, all adjustments necessary to reflect the significant effects of the Crackle transaction have been made. These combined financial statements are based on assumptions and estimates considered appropriate by our management; however, they are unaudited and are not necessarily, and should not be assumed to be, an indication of our financial position or results of operations that would have been achieved had the acquisitions been completed as of the dates indicated or that may be achieved in the future. The unaudited pro forma condensed combined statements of operations do not include all of the effects of cost savings that may result from operating efficiencies as a result of the Crackle transaction.

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information is being provided for illustrative purposes only and does not purport to represent what the actual results of operations of Crackle Plus would have been had the Crackle Transaction occurred on the date assumed or any other date, nor is it necessarily indicative of Crackle Plus's future results of operations for any future period or as of any future date. The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information is based upon currently available information and estimates and assumptions that the Company's management believes are reasonable as of the date hereof. Any of the factors underlying these estimates and assumptions may change or prove to be materially different.

Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.
Pro Forma Condensed Combined Statement of Operations
For the Year Ended December 31, 2019
(unaudited)

	CSS (1) Entertainment Historical	Crackle U.S. (2) Historical	Crackle U.S. (3) Historical	Pro Forma Adjustments	Pro Forma Combined
Revenue, net	55,363,906	15,040,554	7,693,237	-	78,097,697
Cost of revenue	40,423,550	16,992,166	6,964,230	(10,328,355) (A)	54,051,591
Gross profit	14,940,356	(1,951,612)	729,007	10,328,355	24,046,106
Operating expenses:					
Selling, general and administrative	22,242,032	6,237,890	3,300,265	(7,248,979) (B)	24,531,208
Management and license fees	5,536,390	-	-	2,273,379 (C)	7,809,769
Total operating expenses	27,778,422	6,237,890	3,300,265	(4,975,600)	32,340,977
Operating (loss) / income before Amortization	(12,838,066)	(8,189,502)	(2,571,258)	15,303,955	(8,294,871)
Amortization	13,293,279	-	-	(3,114,847) (D)	10,178,432
Operating (loss) / income	(26,131,345)	(8,189,502)	(2,571,258)	18,418,802	(18,473,303)
Interest income	(40,191)	-	-	-	(40,191)
Interest expense	811,017	-	-	-	811,017
Loss on Debt Extinguishment	350,691	-	-	(350,691) (E)	-
Acquisition-related costs	3,968,289	-	-	(3,968,289) (F)	-
Goodwill impairment expense	-	4,100,000	-	-	4,100,000
Loss before income taxes and preferred dividends	(31,221,151)	(12,289,502)	(2,571,258)	22,737,782	(23,344,129)
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	585,000	-	-	(6,871,574) (G)	(6,286,574)
Net loss before noncontrolling interests and preferred dividends	(31,806,151)	(12,289,502)	(2,571,258)	29,609,356	(17,057,555)
Net Loss attributable to noncontrolling interests	(134,282)	-	-	403 (H)	(133,879)
Net loss attributable to Chicken Soup for the Soul Entertainment, Inc.	(31,671,869)	(12,289,502)	(2,571,258)	29,608,953	(16,923,676)
Preferred dividends	3,304,947	-	-	-	3,304,947
Net loss available to common Stockholders	(34,976,816)	(12,289,502)	(2,571,258)	29,608,953	(20,228,623)
Net loss per common share:					
Basic and diluted	(2.92)				(1.69)
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding					
Basic and diluted	11,987,292				11,987,292

(1) The Company's financial information presented is as filed in our audited Annual Report on Form 10-K for the twelve months ended December 31, 2019 filed on March 30, 2020, which includes Crackle U.S. financial information from the date of acquisition beginning May 15, 2019 through December 31, 2019.

(2) Crackle U.S. financial information presented is for the period from January 1, 2019 to March 31, 2019 as filed on Form 8-K/A, on July 30, 2019.

(3) Crackle U.S. financial information presented is for the period from April 1, 2019 to May 14, 2019.

See accompanying notes to unaudited pro forma condensed combined information.

NOTES TO UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Note 1 – Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Statements of Operations Adjustments for the Twelve Months Ended December 31, 2019

Adjustments included in the column under the heading “Pro Forma Adjustments” in the Unaudited Condensed Combined Statement of Operations for the twelve months ended December 31, 2019, which assume the transaction occurred as of January 1, 2018 consist of the following:

(A)	Represents adjustment to reduce content amortization and studio fees due to the change in content license fee structures. As a part of the business combination the parties entered into revenue share content AVOD agreements.	(6,368,973)
	Represents adjustment to reduce costs related to maintaining the AVOD platform as the Company entered as part of the business combination into a fixed fee agreement.	(3,959,382)
	Total adjustments to Cost of Revenue:	(10,328,355)
(B)	Represents adjustment to reduce marketing spend resulting from the termination of marketing contracts previously utilized by Crackle U.S. and excluded as contracts from assets transferred as a part of the business combination as the company uses its owned-and-operated networks and brand related social media to drive growth through cross-promotion.	(414,085)
	Represents adjustment for terminated employees of the workforce of Crackle U.S., reducing duplicative roles between the two entities as per agreed and executed severance agreements entered upon the consummation.	(2,114,011)
	Represents adjustment to eliminate Sony corporate overhead allocation expenses not applicable to the Crackle Plus business. Costs historically allocated by Sony include costs for operating services contractually agreed to be provided by the parent company as a part of the business combination via the executed management fee agreement. Costs associated with such management fees have been added as pro forma adjustment (C) below.	(4,720,883)
	Total adjustments to Selling General and Administrative:	(7,248,979)
(C)	Represents adjustment to record additional management fees to be owed to affiliated company based on revenues earned under existing management & licensing agreements.	2,273,379
(D)	Represents adjustment to record valued acquisition related Intangible Asset amortization over the useful life of the intangible assets for the period presented on a straight-line basis.	(3,114,847)
(E)	Represents adjustment to eliminate historical nonrecurring debt extinguishment costs included on the historical financial statements of the company attributable to the transaction.	(350,691)
(F)	Represents adjustment to eliminate historical nonrecurring acquisition related costs included on the historical financial statements of the company directly attributable to the transaction.	(3,968,289)
(G)	Represents adjustment to record the effect of pro forma adjustments on income taxes calculated at a statutory tax rate of 26.93%, excluding any valuation allowance adjustments.	(6,871,574)
(H)	Represents adjustment to record the effect of the noncontrolling equity interest of 1% held by Sony in the results of the Crackle Plus joint venture.	403